

目 录

LESSON 1	1
LESSON 2	16
LESSON 3	31
LESSON 4	47
LESSON 5	62
LESSON 6	78
LESSON 7	94
LESSON 8	109
LESSON 9	124
LESSON 10	139
LESSON 11	153
LESSON 12	167
LESSON 13	180
LESSON 14	193
LESSON 15	207
LESSON 16	222
LESSON 17	237
LESSON 18	253
LESSON 19	268
LESSON 20	284
LESSON 21	298
LESSON 22	312
LESSON 23	326
LESSON 24	340

LESSON 1

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. A monument was built to *commemorate* the _____.
 (A) caution (B) victory (C) building
2. The children *huddled* together for _____.
 (A) warmth (B) travel (C) expenditure
3. *Censure* is sometimes harder to bear than _____.
 (A) fortitude (B) praise (C) punishment
4. The new vaccine *eradicated* all traces of the _____ within three months.
 (A) wealth (B) disease (C) crime
5. The barbarians *defiled* the church by using it as a _____.
 (A) stable (B) temple (C) shrine

△解 答 △
 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. A

~~~~~《第一部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                                       | MEANING                                                                  | TYPICAL USE                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>abdomen</b><br>[æbdəmen,<br>-dou-]<br><i>n.</i> (人体的)腹部 | the middle part of<br>the body contain-<br>ing the stomach<br>and bowels | The pregnant woman has an en-<br>larged <b>abdomen</b> . 那位有身孕的妇<br>人有增大的下腹。 |
| <b> belly</b>                                              |                                                                          |                                                                              |

## 2 VOCABULARY 10000

| WORD                                                             | MEANING                                                              | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>bereave</b> (bi'ri:v)<br>v. 1. 剥夺；使丧失<br>2. 使痛失<br>(亲属等)      | 1. deprive ruthlessly; rob; take away<br>2. leave desolate and alone | The lost hikers were <i>bereft</i> of hope when the rescue plane did not see them. 当救援的飞机没有看到他们时,那些迷路的徒步者丧失了希望。<br>The children were <i>bereaved</i> by the death of their parents. 那些死去父、母亲的孩子是可怜的、孤独的。 |
| <b>deprive</b>                                                   |                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>consecrate</b><br>('kɔnsikreit)<br>v. 奉为神圣;尊崇<br>devote       | devote to some special use; make holy or sacred                      | This battlefield is <i>consecrated</i> to the memory of the soldiers who died here. 这场战场被视为圣地以纪念死于该处的战士。                                                                                                 |
| <b>evoke</b> (i'veuk)<br>v. 唤起;引起<br>invoke                      | bring out; call forth; cause to appear                               | A good joke does not necessarily <i>evoke</i> a hearty laugh. 好笑话并不一定逗人大笑。                                                                                                                               |
| <b>groove</b> (gru:v)<br>n. 沟;槽;凹线<br>furrow                     | a long narrow channel or furrow; corrugation; rut                    | Wheels left <i>grooves</i> in a muddy dirt road. 车轮在泥泞的路上留下凹痕。                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>jolt</b> (dʒoult)<br>v. 摆动;使颠簸<br>joggle                      | shake roughly; shake with sudden jerks                               | The old car <i>jolted</i> its passengers badly as it went over the rough road. 那旧车子走过崎岖的道路时,很厉害地颠簸着它的乘客。                                                                                                 |
| <b>obsolete</b><br>('ɔbsəli:t)<br>adj. 作废的;<br>过时的<br>antiquated | no longer in use; out of date                                        | Bowing to greet a lady is now an <i>obsolete</i> custom. 现今,用鞠躬来欢迎女士已是过时的习俗。                                                                                                                             |

| WORD                    | MEANING                                                          | TYPICAL USE                                                                                               |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| prowl [prəʊl]           | wander about quietly and secretly in search of something; stroll | Many wild animals <i>prowl</i> at night looking for something to eat. 许多野兽在夜间巡行以找寻食物。                     |
| v. 潜行以寻觅或偷窃<br>同 rove   |                                                                  |                                                                                                           |
| scoop [sku:p]           | dig out; hollow out                                              | The children <i>scooped</i> holes in the sand. 孩子们挖沙坑。                                                    |
| v. 挖；掘<br>同 shovel      |                                                                  |                                                                                                           |
| status [ˈsteɪtəs]       | state or condition of affairs; position; standing; stage         | Diplomats are interested in the <i>status</i> of world affairs. 外交家关心世局。                                  |
| n. 状况；地位<br>同 situation |                                                                  |                                                                                                           |
| sue [sju:, su:]         | start a law case against; appeal to; charge; impeach             | The farmer <i>sued</i> the railroad station because his cow was killed by the train. 那位农夫因他的牛被火车压死而控告火车站。 |
| v. 起诉；控告<br>同 indict    |                                                                  |                                                                                                           |

**Exercise 1.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. The counter of the sink has many \_\_\_\_\_ along which the water will run off.
2. The cat \_\_\_\_\_ around the cellar looking for mice.
3. We all sympathized with the husband who was \_\_\_\_\_ of his beloved wife.
4. Her singing \_\_\_\_\_ admiration from the public.
5. We still use this machine though it is \_\_\_\_\_.

【解答】 1. grooves 2. prowled 3. bereaved 4. evoked 5. obsolete

## ~~~~~《第二部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                                               | MEANING                                                        | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>bandit</b> (ˈbaendit)<br>n. 强盗;土匪<br>同 brigand                  | a highway man or robber, especially one of a gang; outlaw      | The <i>bandit</i> in a typical Western movie rides a horse and goes armed, either alone or in a group. 在典型的西部片中,土匪单独或成群结队骑着马且全副武装。 |
| <b>commemorate</b><br>(kə'meməreɪt)<br>v. 纪念;庆祝<br>同 celebrate     | honor the memory of; observe                                   | Christmas <i>commemorates</i> the birth of Jesus Christ. 圣诞节是庆祝耶稣基督的诞生。                                                            |
| <b>defile</b> (di'fail)<br>v. 弄脏;弄污<br>同 infect                    | make dirty or impure; pollute; sully                           | The children's muddy shoes <i>defiled</i> all the rugs in the hotel. 孩子们泥泞的鞋子弄脏了旅社所有的地毯。                                           |
| <b>deviation</b><br>(di'veiʃən)<br>n. 离题;偏差<br>同 delegate          | turning aside; divergence; detour                              | Running in the hall is a <i>deviation</i> from the school rules and will not be allowed. 在走廊上奔跑是违反校规且不被允许的。                        |
| <b>fortitude</b><br>('fɔ:tɪtju:d)<br>n. 坚忍;刚毅<br>同 endurance       | courage in facing pain, danger, or trouble; firmness of spirit | She could bear the disappointments of other people with tolerable <i>fortitude</i> . 她能够毅然忍受他人带给她的失望。                              |
| <b>inconsolable</b><br>(,ɪnkən'souləbl)<br>adj. 伤心的<br>同 depressed | not to be comforted; broken-hearted                            | The little girl was <i>inconsolable</i> at the loss of her kitten. 那小女孩因失去她的小猫伤心不已。                                                |

| WORD                                                       | MEANING                                                       | TYPICAL USE                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>nibble</b> [ˈnibl]<br>vi. 细咬; 细食<br>回 bite              | eat away with quick, small bites as a rabbit or a mouse does  | Aren't you hungry? You are only <b>nibbling</b> your food. 你不饿吗? 你只是在轻咬你的食物。                |
| <b>pageant</b><br>[ˈpeɪdʒənt]<br>n. 壮观; 华饰<br>回 exhibition | an elaborate spectacle; exposition                            | The coronation of the new king was a splendid <b>pageant</b> . 新王的加冕典礼非常壮观。                 |
| <b>scourge</b> [skə:dʒ]<br>n. 引起灾害的事物或人<br>回 disaster      | something or someone which causes great trouble or misfortune | After the <b>scourge</b> of flood usually comes the <b>scourge</b> of disease. 洪水之后往往有瘟疫发生。 |
| <b>tumble</b> [tʌmbl]<br>v. 跌落; 跌倒<br>回 fall               | fall to the ground; fall suddenly and violently               | The crippled child <b>tumbled</b> down the stairs and was badly hurt. 那跛脚的小孩从楼梯上跌下来, 受伤很重。  |

**Exercise 1. 2** 从第二部份中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The iron in the ship caused a (an) \_\_\_\_\_ of the magnetic needle of the compass.
2. A marathon runner must have great \_\_\_\_\_ to run such a long distance.
3. The pretty girl's reputation was \_\_\_\_\_ by malicious gossips.
4. The boy is just learning to walk; he is always \_\_\_\_\_ over the floor.
5. The inauguration ceremony of the new President was a splendid \_\_\_\_\_.

【解答】 1. deviation 2. fortitude 3. defiled 4. tumbling 5. pageant

## ~~~~~(第三部分)~~~~~

| WORD                                                                | MEANING                                                       | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>afflict</b> (ə'flɪkt)<br>v. 使痛苦<br>回 distress                    | cause pain to; trouble very much; sicken; ail                 | There are many illnesses which afflict old people. 老人为许多病症而痛苦。                                             |
| <b>censure</b> ('senʃə)n<br>v. 责难<br>回 blame                        | express an unfavorable opinion; reprove; reproach             | His employer censured him for neglecting his work. 他的老板责难他轻视工作。                                            |
| <b>dissimulation</b><br>(di'simju'lēfən)<br>n. 假装;掩饰<br>回 deception | the act of deceit; hypocrisy; pretention; make believe        | The thief intruded into the house with caution and dissimulation. 窃贼小心掩饰地闯入屋内。                             |
| <b>flog</b> (flɒg)<br>v. 重打;鞭笞<br>回 spank                           | beat or whip hard; paddle; cane                               | Nowadays, it is an inhumane punishment to flog the disobedient soldiers or sailors. 现今,鞭笞不服从的兵士或水手是不人道的惩罚。 |
| <b>inscription</b><br>(in'skri:pʃən)<br>n. 题字;碑铭<br>回 caption       | something written on a monument, coin, etc; heading; epigraph | According to the inscription on its cornerstone, this building was erected in 1919. 根据基石上的碑铭,这栋建筑物建于1919年。 |
| <b>meddle</b> ('medl)<br>v. 干预或扰乱他人之事<br>回 intervene                | touch unnecessarily; interfere; butt in                       | The gifts of charity meddled with a gentleman's private affair. 慈善礼物干扰一位绅士的私事。                             |

| WORD                                                    | MEANING                                                     | TYPICAL USE                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>posture</b> [ˈpəʊʃə]<br>n. 人体的姿势<br>回 attitude       | the position of the body; way of holding the body; demeanor | He doesn't sit straight; his <i>posture</i> is very bad. 他坐得不正；他的姿势很糟糕。                                  |
| <b>rummage</b> [ˈrʌmɪdʒ]<br>v. 翻寻；寻找<br>回 ransack       | search thoroughly by moving things about; search            | John <i>rummaged</i> all the drawers to find his gloves. 约翰为了寻找他的手套，翻遍了所有的抽屉。                            |
| <b>spout</b> [spaʊt]<br>v. 喷出；涌出<br>回 pour              | come or send out suddenly in a stream; eject; exude         | The water <i>spouted</i> out when the pipe was broken. 当水管破裂时，水快速地喷出来。                                   |
| <b>traverse</b> [ˈtrævə(;)s]<br>v. 走过；横过<br>回 intersect | pass across, over, or through; cut across; bisect           | The climber <i>traversed</i> a long horizontal crack in the face of the mountain slope. 登山者横过山表斜坡上的水平裂缝。 |
| <b>wistful</b> [ˈwɪstfʊl]<br>adj. 渴望的<br>回 yearning     | wishful; longing; desirous; wantful                         | A child stood looking with <i>wistful</i> eyes at the toys in the shop window. 小孩站在橱窗前渴望地看着那些玩具。         |

*Exercise 1. 3* 从第三部份中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. He was \_\_\_\_\_ his horse in a very cruel way.
2. She \_\_\_\_\_ change from the bottom of her purse.
3. The law does not \_\_\_\_\_ unduly with a person's private life.
4. The lights \_\_\_\_\_ the sky searching for enemy planes.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ on the ancient monument was very hard to read.

**【解答】** 1. flogging 2. rummaged 3. meddle 4. traversed  
5. inscription

~~~~~《第四部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| amicable
(ə'mɪkəbl)
<i>adj 友善的</i> | having or showing a friendly attitude; affable; agreeable | The <i>amicable</i> flash of her white teeth was very impressive 她友善地露齿一笑,给人很深刻的印象。 |
| blizzard ('blɪzəd)
<i>n. 大风雪;暴风雪</i> | a long, severe snowfall | The soldiers are very exhausted for they have advanced forward without rest in a <i>blizzard</i> . 士兵们精疲力倦,因为他们在暴风雪中没有休息地继续前进。 |
| cruise (kru:z)
<i>v. 往返航行;海上巡弋</i> | sail or travel about from place to place on pleasure or business | If I were rich, I would like to <i>cruise</i> in the Southern Pacific for six months in a private yacht. 假如我有钱的话,我要乘私人游艇在南太平洋上航行六个月。 |
| eradicate
(ɪ'rædɪkeɪt)
<i>v. 根除;歼灭</i> | get rid of entirely; destroy completely; annihilate; uproot | Yellow fever has been <i>eradicated</i> in the United States but it still exists in some countries. 黄热病在美国已经根除绝迹,但在一些国家却依然存在。 |
| glimmer (ˈglimə)
<i>n. 微光</i> | a faint, unsteady light; glow; flicker | The doctor's report gave us only a <i>glimmer</i> of hope. 医生的报告仅给我们一丝的希望。 |
| gleam | | |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|---|
| lump (lʌmp)
<i>n. 堆;团;大量</i>
回 block | a mass of something solid without a special size or shape; bump | On his desk, many articles and documents are always piled in great <i>lump</i> . 在他的桌上,许多东西和文件总是被堆成一大堆。 |
| ransack
('rænsæk)
<i>v. 细细搜索</i>
回 rummage | search thoroughly through; scour | The woman <i>ransacked</i> the house for her lost jewelry. 那女人仔细搜索房屋以找寻遗失的珠宝。 |
| slash (slæʃ)
<i>v. (以剑、刀等)砍</i>
回 gash | make long, quick cuts with something sharp | He <i>slashed</i> a path through the high grass with a long knife. 他用一把长的刀子在高的草丛中开辟一条小径。 |
| slump (slʌmp)
<i>v. 陷;猛然落下</i>
回 depress | drop or fall heavily or suddenly | Our feet <i>slumped</i> repeatedly through the melting ice. 经过融化的冰时,我们的脚一再地陷落。 |
| vogue (vouɡ)
<i>n. 时尚;流行</i>
回 fashion | popularity or acceptance; mode | That pop-song had a great <i>vogue</i> at one time. 那首通俗歌曲有一阵子非常流行。 |

Exercise 1.4 从第四部份中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Enemy soldiers _____ the city and carried off its treasures.
2. Tired from his long walk, he _____ into a chair.
3. We saw the _____ of a distant light through the trees.
4. He used to have a great _____ as a film actor, but no one goes to the cinema to see him now.
5. What the Ice Age did was to _____ the abundant mammalian life in the northern hemisphere.

【解答】 1. ransacked 2. slumped 3. glimmer 4. vogue 5. eradicate

~~~~~(第五部分)~~~~~

| WORD                                                    | MEANING                                                             | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ascribe</b> ( to )<br>[ə'skraɪb]<br><i>v.</i> 将…归因于… | think as caused or coming from; assign (to)                         | He <i>ascribes</i> his success to skill and hard work. 他把他的成功归因于熟练和辛苦地工作。                                                                                |
| <b>attribute</b>                                        |                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>bulwark</b><br>[ˈbulwərk]<br><i>n.</i> 堡垒；堡垒         | a person, thing, or idea that is a defense or a protection; support | The soldiers kept their heads down behind the <i>bulwark</i> . 士兵们保持头低低地在堡垒的后面。                                                                          |
| <b>safeguard</b>                                        |                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>dubious</b><br>[dju:bjəs]<br><i>adj.</i> 倦疑的；<br>暧昧的 | uncertain; ambiguous; not very good or reliable                     | She looked around this way and that in a <i>dubious</i> manner. 她以一种怀疑的态度看四周。                                                                            |
| <b>doubtful</b>                                         |                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>facet</b> [ˈfæsɪt]<br><i>n.</i> (事情之)一面              | any of the many parts of subject to be considered; phase            | Selfishness was a <i>facet</i> of his character that we seldom saw before. 我们以前很少看到他个性中自私的一面。                                                            |
| <b>aspect</b>                                           |                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>heed</b> [hi:d]<br><i>n.</i> 注意                      | give careful attention to; take notice of; mind                     | For the first time he had to pay <i>heed</i> to his appearance, and in fact he became very well-dressed from then on. 那是他第一次必须去注意自己的外表,而事实上从那时起他就变得很时髦了。 |
| <b>attention</b>                                        |                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                          |

| WORD                                                         | MEANING                                                  | TYPICAL USE                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>huddle</b> [hʌdl]<br>v. 挤成一团<br>同 gather                  | crowd close; press in a mass or heap                     | The boys <b>huddled</b> together under the rock to keep warm. 男孩们缩成一团在石头底下取暖。                        |
| <b>mumble</b> [mʌmbl]<br>v. 嘟哝而言; 咕哝<br>同 murmur             | speak unclearly; speak in a low tone; mutter; whisper    | The old man <b>mumbled</b> something to me, but I could not understand him. 那老人向我咕哝一些事,但是我不懂他在说什么。   |
| <b>relic</b> [relɪk]<br>n. 遗迹; 遗物; 遗俗<br>同 remainder         | a thing, custom, or the remains left from the past       | This ruined bridge is a <b>relic</b> of the Korean War in 1950. 这倾圮的桥是1950年朝鲜战争的遗迹。                  |
| <b>smog</b> [smɒg]<br>n. 烟雾<br>同 fume                        | a combination of smoke and fog in the air                | Automobile exhaust fumes are one of the major causes of <b>smog</b> . 汽车排出的烟是造成烟雾的主要原因之一。            |
| <b>wayfarer</b><br>[wei'feər]<br>n. 旅人; 徒步旅行者<br>同 traveller | a tourist, especially one who travels on foot; journeyer | The thirsty <b>wayfarer</b> was glad to find a fresh spring near the road. 口干舌燥的旅行者很高兴地发现靠近马路的清凉的喷泉。 |
| <b>wont</b><br>[wount, wɔnt]<br>n. 习惯<br>同 habit             | habitude; rule; practice; custom                         | He always speaks with his mouth full of food; it is his <b>wont</b> . 他总是满嘴食物地说话;这是他的习惯。             |

**Exercise 1.5** 从第五部份中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Four people were \_\_\_\_\_ under one umbrella to avoid the sudden shower.
2. I'm feeling better than yesterday, but it is \_\_\_\_\_ that I can go to

school tomorrow.

3. No one knows who wrote that play, but it is usually \_\_\_\_\_ to Cyril Tourneur.
4. We believe that a free press and free speech are \_\_\_\_\_ of democracy.
5. Take \_\_\_\_\_ of what I say, or you will fail in the final examination.

**【解答】** 1. huddled 2. dubious 3. ascribed 4. bulwarks 5. heed

### 成果测验

**Exercise 1.6** 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. (A) abdomen      (B) intuition      (C) belly      (D) paunch
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. (A) contaminate      (B) defile      (C) infect      (D) pollute
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. (A) torment      (B) distress      (C) afflict      (D) cheat
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. (A) hurricane      (B) blizzard      (C) draught      (D) tempest
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. (A) out-of-date      (B) antiquated      (C) obsolete      (D) impolite
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. (A) burglar      (B) outlaw      (C) bandit      (D) chisel
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. (A) bereave      (B) deprive      (C) nibble      (D) rob
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. (A) discharge      (B) blame      (C) reprove      (D) censure
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. (A) endurance      (B) resolution      (C) fortitude      (D) emphasis
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. (A) rummage      (B) explore      (C) ransack      (D) search

**【解答】** 1. B 2. C 3. D 4. C 5. D 6. D 7. C 8. A 9. D 10. B

**Exercise 1.7** 阅读下面的句子,选出句中斜体词所代表的意义:

1. At one time, criminals were *flogged* as a punishment.

- (A) confined      (B) killed      (C) buried      (D) whipped
2. The value of the jewelry was very *dubious*.  
 (A) uncertain      (B) tremendous      (C) trifling      (D) various
3. Roman emperors built arches to *commemorate* their victories.  
 (A) encourage      (B) record in history  
 (C) celebrate      (D) publicize widely
4. A doctor's life is *consecrated* to curing poor and sick people.  
 (A) limited      (B) dedicated      (C) subjected      (D) depended
5. You must not *censure* him until you know the whole story about his mistakes.  
 (A) reprove      (B) insult      (C) doubt      (D) despise
6. The police *ascribed* the automobile accident to fast driving.  
 (A) supposed      (B) attributed      (C) described      (D) illustrated
7. Instead of fighting, the two nations settled the quarrel in an *amicable* way.  
 (A) natural      (B) negotiative      (C) peaceable      (D) reasonable
8. Most science books written 20 years ago are now *obsolete*.  
 (A) antiquated      (B) more useful  
 (C) studied again      (D) very expensive
9. There seems to be a *vogue* for sailing small boats this summer.  
 (A) difficulty      (B) utility      (C) fashion      (D) request
10. Rain runs down a *spout* from the roof to the ground.  
 (A) flow      (B) dust      (C) seed      (D) filth

**【解答】** 1. D 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. A

**Exercise 1.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义最近的单词：

1. *good posture*  
 (A) attitude      (B) personality      (C) placard      (D) profession

2. insect's abdomen

- |                              |              |                    |                 |
|------------------------------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| (A) harm                     | (B) instinct | (C) characteristic | (D) belly       |
| <u>3. bulwark of freedom</u> |              |                    |                 |
| (A) definition               | (B) tyranny  | (C) protection     | (D) disturbance |

4. the mounted bandit

- |                                 |              |                 |                |
|---------------------------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------|
| (A) knight                      | (B) robber   | (C) instrument  | (D) urn        |
| <u>5. the scourge of Heaven</u> |              |                 |                |
| (A) bliss                       | (B) delusion | (C) expectation | (D) punishment |

【解答】

1. A      2. D      3. C.      4. B      5. D

**Exercise 1. 9** 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：

**VOCABULARY LIST**

|           |             |         |              |
|-----------|-------------|---------|--------------|
| censure   | consecrated | defiled | inconsolable |
| obsolete  | rummaged    | huddle  | spout        |
| eradicate | groove      | meddle  | heed         |

1. One country should not \_\_\_\_\_ with the internal affairs of another.
2. The police officers \_\_\_\_\_ the ship in search of drugs.
3. He \_\_\_\_\_ his whole life to the service of his country's welfare.
4. No tyrant can hope to \_\_\_\_\_ the love of liberty, which is strongly embedded in men's heart.
5. The death penalty for theft has long been \_\_\_\_\_.
6. No one will defend them if they incur public \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The river was \_\_\_\_\_ by the wastes poured out of the many factories.
8. He cut a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ in the wood with a chisel to make the water run off along it.

9. They were warned repeatedly, but they were careless and did not give \_\_\_\_\_.

10. The mother cat was \_\_\_\_\_ because her kitten died a few days ago.

【解答】 1. meddle 2. rummaged 3. consecrated 4. eradicate  
5. obsolete 6. censure 7. defiled 8. groove  
9. heed 10. inconsolable

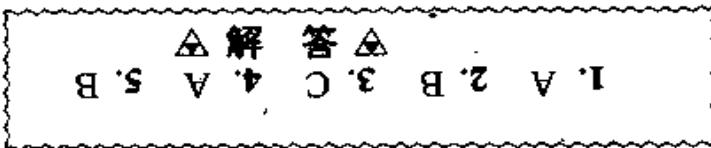
本书由台湾学习出版公司  
授权海南(三环)出版社在  
大陆出版,翻印必究。

## LESSON 2

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. The cross-road in front of the school is a *menace* to the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) children's safety      (B) traffic rules  
 (C) construction of buildings
2. The girl's dresses showed most of the *hues* of the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) admiration      (B) rainbow      (C) fashion
3. My brother was *absolved* of \_\_\_\_\_ for the automobile accident.  
 (A) cause      (B) prediction      (C) blame
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ was standing in the *pulpit* to give a sermon.  
 (A) pastor      (B) shadow      (C) pillar
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ numerous *fractures* in his fox hunting days.  
 (A) captured      (B) suffered      (C) wished



~~~~~《第一部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|-----------------------------------|--|--|
| absolve [əb'zolv]
v. 救免 | free from sin, guilt, responsibility; exonerate; clear | The judge <i>absolved</i> the man of the crime. 法官赦免了他的罪。 |
| exonerate | | |
| bias ['baɪəs]
n. 偏见 | leaning of the mind; inclination; preconception | The <u>umpire</u> should have no <i>bias</i> in favor of either side. 裁判员对两方应不偏不倚。 |
| prejudice | | |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|---|
| contend
[kən'tend]
<i>v. 竞争; 辩论</i>
回 compete | struggle against; fight; argue; contest | Our baseball team is <i>contending</i> for the championship. 我棒球队在争夺冠军。 |
| deplore [di'plɔ:]
<i>v. 悲痛; 深悔</i>
回 lament | be very sorry about; regret deeply; mourn; grieve | We <i>deplore</i> the terrible traffic accident, in which 30 persons were killed and 50 injured. 我们对这次可怕的车祸造成30人死亡, 50人受伤而悲痛不已。 |
| fracture
['frækʃə]
<i>n. 挫伤; 骨折</i>
回 shatter | a break or crack, especially of a bone; split; splinter | The boy fell from a tree and suffered <i>fractures</i> of his right arm and leg. 男孩从树上摔下来, 造成右手脚骨折。 |
| magnitude
['mægnitju:d]
<i>n. 大小; 量; 长(度)</i>
回 bulk | greatness of size, or importance; extent; mass | A crowd of great <i>magnitude</i> attended the President's inauguration. 大批民众参加总统就职典礼。 |
| pith [piθ]
<i>n. 精华部分</i>
回 essence | the important or essential part; point; marrow | The <i>pith</i> of his speech was focused on the importance of education. 他演讲的精华着重于教育的重要性。 |
| relish [rəliʃ]
<i>n. 胃口; 喜好</i>
回 zest | a good favor; pleasure; taste; appetite; savor; flavor | I have no <i>relish</i> for seeing people being whipped. 我不喜欢看别人被鞭笞。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|-------------------|--|--|
| sneak [snik] | move silently and secretly, usually for a bad purpose; go stealthily | Trying not to be seen, they quietly sneaked into the room. 他们为了不被人瞧见,鬼鬼祟祟地进入房间。 |
| v. 潜行; 行为鬼祟 | | |
| lurk | | |
| tidings [taidiŋz] | a message; news; intelligence | The messenger brought tidings from the battlefield. 报信者带来战场上的消息。 |
| n. 消息 | | |
| information | information | |

Exercise 2.1 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The first settlers in America had to _____ with unfriendly Indians, sickness, coldness, and lack of food.
2. A _____ of the leg can be very serious in old people.
3. Most newspapers try not to show _____ in their reporting.
4. They say that hunger is the best _____ for food.
5. The book was a work of such _____ that it took 10 years to write.

【解答】 1. contend 2. fracture 3. bias 4. relish 5. magnitude

~~~~~《第二部分》~~~~~

| WORD             | MEANING                                            | TYPICAL USE                                                                        |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| aghast [ə'ga:st] | filled with surprise, horror, or terror; surprised | Many people would be <b>aghast</b> at the thought of another war. 许多人一想到再打仗就觉得很恐怖。 |
| adj. 惊骇的;<br>恐怖的 |                                                    |                                                                                    |
| astonished       |                                                    |                                                                                    |

| WORD                                                 | MEANING                                                  | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cumber[ˈkʌmbə]<br>v. 阻碍；拖累<br>同 hinder               | trouble or burden with something useless or unnecessary  | We shall not <i>cumber</i> our thought with his reproaches. 我们不会因为他的谴责，而妨碍到我们的想法。                                     |
| decree[diˈkri:]<br>v. 命令；决定<br>同 determine           | give an order; to order or settle by authority; decide   | The city government <i>decreed</i> that all dogs must be licensed. 市政府颁布所有的狗都必须有牌照。                                   |
| frolic[ˈfrɔlik]<br>v. 嬉戏；作乐<br>同 frisk               | play in gay and lively manner; play about joyously       | The children were <i>frolicking</i> with the puppy in the backyard. 小孩们和小狗在后院玩耍。                                      |
| intercourse[ˈintə(;)kɔ:s]<br>n. 交往；交通<br>同 relations | connection; communication; transactions                  | There was much commercial <i>intercourse</i> between the two countries before World War I. 第二次大战前，这两国有许多商业往来。         |
| menace[ˈmenəs]<br>n. 威胁<br>同 intimidation            | something that threatens; threat                         | In dryweather forest fires are a great <i>menace</i> . 干燥的天气下森林火灾是一大威胁。                                               |
| precipice[ˈpresɪpɪs]<br>n. 悬崖<br>同 cliff             | a very steep cliff or slope; crag or steep mountain-side | I was standing on the very edge of a bank, a <i>precipice</i> not less than fifty feet deep. 我站在海岸的最边缘，一个不低于50英尺深的悬崖。 |
| sanctuary[ˈsæŋktjuəri]<br>n. 圣所；圣堂；神殿<br>同 shrine    | a sacred place; a temple                                 | The church is generally considered as a <i>sanctuary</i> . 教堂通常被认为是神圣的地方。                                             |

| WORD                                           | MEANING                            | TYPICAL USE                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>sprout</b> (sprout)<br>v. 长出;发芽<br>回 grow   | begin to grow; shoot forth         | After a light spring rain, leaves began to <i>sprout</i> from trees. 下了一场小小的春雨后,树木开始长出新芽。 |
| <b>tread</b> (tred)<br>v. 行走于;步行于<br>回 trample | set the foot down; walk or step on | She <i>trod</i> lightly in order not to wake the sleeping baby. 她轻手轻脚地走,以免吵醒睡梦中的婴儿。       |
| <b>tread</b> (tred)<br>v. 行走于;步行于<br>回 trample | set the foot down; walk or step on | She <i>trod</i> lightly in order not to wake the sleeping baby. 她轻手轻脚地走,以免吵醒睡梦中的婴儿。       |

**Exercise 2.2** 从第二部分中选出一个最适当的单词,填入空格内:

- They have \_\_\_\_\_ that all the conflicts between countries should end.
- After a shower a meadow \_\_\_\_\_ with the yellow buds of dandelion.
- The gunman \_\_\_\_\_ him with weapons and forced him to give up his money.
- My friend's suggestion that we should run away from home left my sister \_\_\_\_\_.
- Airplanes, good roads and telephones make \_\_\_\_\_ with different parts of the country far easier than it was 50 years ago.

【解答】 1. decreed 2. sprouts 3. menaced 4. aghast 5. intercourse

### 《第三部分》

| WORD                                                      | MEANING                                               | TYPICAL USE                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ammunition</b><br>[æmju'nɪʃən]<br>n 弹药;军火<br>回 bullets | supplies of what is needed for firing guns; cartridge | The soldiers still had their guns but they were out of <i>ammunition</i> . 士兵们空有枪炮却无弹药。 |

| WORD                                                              | MEANING                                                        | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>dotting</b> [ˈdəʊtɪŋ]<br><i>adj.</i> 过于喜爱的; 溺爱的                | foolishly fond; too fond; loving blindly                       | A <i>dotting</i> mother alienates her husband by lavishing too much love on their child. 溺爱孩子的母亲给孩子们太多的爱,以至于和丈夫疏远了。       |
| <b>fond</b>                                                       |                                                                |                                                                                                                           |
| <b>engross</b> [ɪnˈgrəʊs]<br><i>v.</i> 全神贯注于                      | occupy wholly; fill up completely; take up attention of        | The artist was so <i>engrossed</i> in his painting that he didn't notice the people watching him. 艺术家太专注于作画,以至于没注意到人们在看他。 |
| <b>adsorb</b>                                                     |                                                                |                                                                                                                           |
| <b>gush</b> [gʌʃ]<br><i>n.</i> 涌出;倾流                              | a rush of water or other liquid from an enclosed place; stream | If you got a deep cut in your arm, there's usually a <i>gush</i> of blood. 假使你的手臂有很深的割伤,通常会有鲜血涌出。                         |
| <b>flow</b>                                                       |                                                                |                                                                                                                           |
| <b>insuperable</b><br>[ɪn'sju:pərəbl]<br><i>adj.</i> 不能超越的; 不能克服的 | too difficult to be conquered or passed; unbeatable            | The deep river was an <i>insuperable</i> barrier to those who could not swim. 对不会游泳的人来说,这条深河是无法超越的障碍。                     |
| <b>unconquerable</b>                                              |                                                                |                                                                                                                           |
| <b>ordeal</b> [ɔ:dɪl]<br><i>n.</i> 残酷的考验; 痛苦的考验                   | a severe test or experience; tribulation                       | Her life has been full of <i>ordeals</i> ; sickness, poverty, and loss of her beloved son. 她生命坎坷;病痛,贫穷又失去了她最亲爱的儿子。        |
| <b>trial</b>                                                      |                                                                |                                                                                                                           |
| <b>pouch</b> [paʊtʃ]<br><i>n.</i> 小袋;囊                            | a bag; a small bag attached in the pocket; poke                | He kept his tobacco in a leather <i>pouch</i> fastened to the belt. 烟草放在系在腰带上的皮囊中。                                        |
| <b>sack</b>                                                       |                                                                |                                                                                                                           |

| WORD                                                                             | MEANING                                                                                                             | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| screech [skri:tʃ]<br>v. 尖叫;哭<br>回 shriek                                         | give a sharp, high scream; cry; shrill                                                                              | The brakes <i>screeched</i> and the car suddenly stopped with a jerk. 刹车尖响一下,车顿然停下。                                                                                                                        |
| stature [ˈstætʃə]<br>n. 身材;身长<br>回 height                                        | the height of a person or thing; elevation; altitude                                                                | A man who is six feet tall is above the average <i>stature</i> in China. 在中国,一个人身高六英尺是超乎一般人的身高。                                                                                                            |
| undermine<br>[ʌndə'main]<br>v. 1. 以危险手段伤害;暗中破坏<br>2. 在…之下挖掘;逐渐损毁<br>回 erode, dig | 1. weaken by secret or deceitful means; corrode<br>2. dig beneath; to wear away the earth beneath, removing support | The President's enemies are spreading ill rumors to <i>undermine</i> his authority. 总统的敌人在散布谣言来暗中破坏他的威信。<br>The house is unsafe since the foundations were <i>undermined</i> by floods. 自从房基被洪水损毁后,房子很不安全。 |

**Exercise 2.3** 从第三部分中选出一个最适当的单词,填入空格内:

- Some people tried to \_\_\_\_\_ the chairman's influence by spreading ill rumors about him.
- He heard a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ of anger from the old woman's room.
- He was so \_\_\_\_\_ in his work that he completely forgot the time.
- The boy was so courageous that he overcame every \_\_\_\_\_ difficulty and became the leader of his tribe.
- After the Korean War, the Koreans passed through terrible \_\_\_\_\_.

【解答】 1. undermine 2. screech 3. engrossed 4. insuperable  
5. ordeals

## (第四部分)

| WORD                                         | MEANING                                              | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>assess</b> [ə'ses]<br>v. 评估;估定            | estimate the value of property;                      | Damages from last week's flood have been <b>assessed</b> at                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>appraise</b><br>同                         | value(at)                                            | \$ 50, 000. 上星期的洪水所造成的损失数目估计为五万元。                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>chamber</b><br>['tʃeimber]<br>n. 1. 房间;寝室 | 1. a room (in a house); a bedroom<br>2. 立法或司法团体      | The children searched each and every <b>chamber</b> of the house for the cat. 孩子们遍寻每一个房间寻找小猫。<br>The Congress of the United States has two <b>chambers</b> ; the Senate and the House of Representatives. 美国国会分为参议院和众议院。 |
| <b>room</b><br>同                             |                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>disdain</b> [dis'dein]<br>v. 鄙视;轻视        | treat with contempt; look down on; scorn; contempt   | Now that she is rich, she <b>disdains</b> to speak to her old friends. 现在她富有了, 不屑跟她的老朋友讲话。                                                                                                                               |
| <b>despise</b><br>同                          |                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>espy</b> [is'pai]<br>v. 看出;探出             | catch sight of; see at a distance                    | One day Robinson Crusoe <b>espied</b> a foot print on the sand. 有一天鲁滨逊·克鲁索看到沙上的一个脚印。                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>despise</b><br>同                          |                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>glossy</b> [glɒsi]<br>adj. 平滑的;有光泽的       | smooth and shiny; polished; slick; burnished; sheeny | The beautiful <b>glossy</b> coat of the cat shone as it lay in sunlight. 当小猫躺在太阳光下时, 她那美丽光滑的毛闪闪发光。                                                                                                                       |
| <b>sleek</b><br>同                            |                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>janitor</b> [dʒænɪtə]<br>n. 管门者           | a doorkeeper or porter; caretaker; gatekeeper        | The <b>janitor</b> swept the floors and locked up the building every night. 看门员每晚拖地和锁门。                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>doorman</b><br>同                          |                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

| WORD                                              | MEANING                                                                      | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>packet</b> [ˈpækɪt]<br>n. 包裹(邮件等的)一捆           | a small bundle; package                                                      | She bought a <i>packet</i> of envelopes at the stationery store. 她在文具店买了一捆信封。                                                                                            |
| ■ <b>parcel</b>                                   |                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>pulpit</b> [ˈpulpɪt]<br>n. (教堂的)讲台;说教台         | a platform or raised structure in a church from which the minister preaches; | The eloquent and ornate carving on a church <i>pulpit</i> was done by Indian hands. 教堂讲台上生动而华丽的雕刻是印第安人的手笔。                                                               |
| ■ <b>lectern</b>                                  | desk                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>scorch</b> [skɔ:tʃ]<br>v. 1. 烘焦;烧焦<br>2. 使萎;使枯 | 1. burn the surface of; parch<br>2. dry up; wither                           | The meat was black and <i>scorched</i> outside but still raw inside. 那块肉外表焦黑,但里面仍是生的。<br>The grass is <i>scorched</i> by so much hot sunshine in summer. 夏天阳光强烈,以至于草地枯萎。 |
| ■ <b>singe</b>                                    |                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>surge</b> [sə:dʒ]<br>v. (波浪)起伏;汹涌              | rise and fall as a ship does on the waves                                    | The ship <i>surged</i> in the stormy seas, rolling and pitching with each wave. 大船在暴风雨的海上随波浪起伏。                                                                          |
| ■ <b>rise</b>                                     |                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>utensil</b><br>[ju(:)ˈtensl]<br>n. 器皿;用具       | an instrument; anything useful for a particular purpose; tool                | Pots, pans and kettles are useful kitchen <i>utensils</i> . 罐子, 盘子和水壶是有用的厨房用具。                                                                                           |
| ■ <b>implement</b>                                |                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                          |

**Exercise 2.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- It is wrong to \_\_\_\_\_ a man merely because he has no money.
- This is the death \_\_\_\_\_ where murderers wait to be put to death.
- The committee met to \_\_\_\_\_ the idea of establishing a new college

school.

4. She \_\_\_\_\_ my shirt by setting the iron too high for the fabric.
5. She turned around just in time to \_\_\_\_\_ an old friend disappear in the crowd.

**【解答】** 1. disdain 2. chamber 3. assess 4. scorched 5. espy

~~~~~《第五部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|---|
| bayonet ('beɪənɪt)
n. 刺刀
回 dagger | a knife or dagger that may be fixed to the end of a rifle; dirk | When the soldiers ran out of ammunition, they fixed bayonets to their rifles. 当士兵们用完了弹药时,就把刺刀上膛。 |
| compassion
(kəm'pæʃən)
n. 怜悯;同情
回 sympathy | sorrow for the suffering of others; pity; mercy; clemency | Compassion for the orphans caused him to give money for their support. 因同情孤儿使他拿出钱来资助他们。 |
| detain (di'teɪn)
v. 1. 使迟延;
阻止
回 retard | 1. prevent a person from going away; delay

2. 拘留;扣押 | Lazy boys sometimes are detained at school to do extra work after ordinary lessons are finished. 懒惰的孩子在正课结束后通常被留在学校做额外的作业。

The police detained the suspected thief for more questioning. 警察将窃嫌拘留作进一步的讯问。 |
| faction ('fækʃən)
n. 小派;小党派
回 clique | a group or party within a large group; part; side | A faction in our club tried to make the president resign. 我们俱乐部中有一小派别,拟使主席辞职。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| hue [hju:]
<i>n.</i> 色彩; 色度
同 color | tone; tint; a shade of color | The diamond shone with every hue under the bright sun. 钻石在阳光下闪烁着每一种色彩。 |
| luster ['la:stə]
<i>n.</i> 1. 光彩; 光辉
2. 荣誉; 光荣
同 shimmer, honor | 1. a bright shine on the surface
2. glory; fame; splendor | He polished the metal until it had a fine luster. 他一直磨着那块金属, 直到它发出美丽的光泽。
The deeds of heroes add luster to a nation's history. 英雄的事绩使国家的历史增辉。 |
| persevere
[pə:sɪ'veɪə]
<i>v.</i> 坚忍
同 persist | continue steadily in doing something hard; be stubborn; hold on | He persevered in his study until he succeeded. 他孜孜不倦直到成功。 |
| rave [reiv]
<i>v.</i> 发狂语
同 effervesce | talk wildly; speak in a confused manner | Because of his high fever, the sick man raved all night. 那位病人因高烧而整夜胡乱说话。 |
| slay [sleɪ]
<i>v.</i> 杀; 毙
同 kill | kill violently; put to death | He intended to slay his father's murderer. 他意欲杀死谋杀他父亲的凶手。 |
| tablet ['tæblɪt]
<i>n.</i> 塊; 片
同 pill | a small piece of medicine pressed into a flat, round cake; capsule | The doctor told her to take three tablets a day. 医生告诉她每天吃三片。 |
| voluptuous
[və'lʌptjuəs]
<i>adj.</i> 肉感的
同 sensuous | delighting in sensual pleasure; fleshly; carnal | Nowadays an actress with voluptuous beauty seems to be more popular than the one with intelligent looks. 现今, 妖艳的女演员似乎比智慧型的女演员吃香。 |

Exercise 2.5 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. I was _____, partly by the rain, and partly by company that I liked very much.
2. After all the ammunition ran out, the soldiers fought with their _____.
3. He belongs to the liberal _____ of the political party.
4. The dancer's movements were slow and _____.
5. The world's main religions all teach us to have _____ for the poor, and those in need.

【解答】 1. detained 2. bayonets 3. faction 4. voluptuous
5. compassion

成 果 测 验

Exercise 2.6 找出一个与其它三个不相关的单词：

- _____ 1. (A)preoccupied (B)engrossed (C)absorbed (D)supplemented
- _____ 2. (A)bereave (B)deplore (C)lament (D)bemoan
- _____ 3. (A)instrument (B)utensil (C)facility (D)implement
- _____ 4. (A)trial (B)rebuke (C)ordeal (D)tribulation
- _____ 5. (A)bias (B)torment (C)prejudice (D)inclination
- _____ 6. (A)estimate (B)compensate (C)appraise (D)assess
- _____ 7. (A)tablet (B)lump (C)pill (D)capsule
- _____ 8. (A)despise (B)reprove (C)disdain (D)scorn
- _____ 9. (A)escarpment (B)cliff (C)crack (D)precipice

10 (A) glory (B) luster (C) desire (D) splendor

【解答】 1. D 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. B 6. B 7. B 8. B 9. C 10. C

Exercise 2.7 阅读下面的句子,选出句中斜体词所代表的意义:

1. When the soldiers had used all their *ammunition*, they went on fighting with their swords.

(A) ration (B) weapons (C) strength (D) bullets

2. Public tranquility was disturbed by a discontented *faction*.

(A) reality (B) throng (C) accident (D) clique

3. Her heart was filled with *compassion* for the motherless children.

(A) sympathy (B) regret (C) wistfulness (D) sorrow

4. The priest *absolved* the boy when he confessed he had stolen some money from his father's desk drawer.

(A) exonerated (B) conscied (C) reproved (D) blamed

5. The boy did not reach the *stature* of his father; he was always under his arm.

(A) feature (B) independence (C) height (D) position

6. This matter is not very important, and shouldn't *detain* us a long time.

(A) retard (B) embarrass (C) disdain (D) deplore

7. Farmers in the 1930's had to *contend* against drought and dust.

(A) prevent (B) conquer (C) struggle (D) censure

8. In 1845 Daewonkoon *decreed* the expulsion of the Jesuits.

(A) prohibited (B) practised

(C) prescribed (D) proclaimed

9. Cut a piece of lead or zinc, and observe the *luster* of its fresh surface.

- (A) brilliance (B) fraction (C) pureness (D) groove

【解答】 1. D 2. D 3. A 4. A 5. C 6. A 7. C 8. D 9. A

Exercise 2.8 找出一个与斜体词意义最接近的单词：

1. *glossy fur*
 (A) heavy (B) shaggy (C) lustrous (D) comfortable
2. *firm tread*
 (A) body (B) footstep (C) position (D) resolution
3. *gorgeous hue*
 (A) color (B) costume (C) implement (D) appearance
4. *pith of speech*
 (A) essence (B) manner (C) necessity (D) divergence
5. *insuperable difficulties*
 (A) not extreme (B) ordinary (C) unconquerable (D) imaginary

【解答】 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. C

Exercise 2.9 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：

VOCABULARY LIST

| | | | |
|---------|------------|----------|-----------|
| surged | deploring | gush | undermine |
| packet | persevered | bias | hues |
| sneaked | disdained | detained | faction |

1. The honest official _____ the offer of a bribe from the citizen.
2. She _____ in typing the assignment despite her exhaustion and her loss of accuracy.
3. He liked old-fashioned ways and had a _____ against progress.

4. The room was decorated in various _____ of blue ranging from light to dark.
5. She tied a ribbon around the _____ of letters.
6. The man _____ about the barn watching for a chance to steal the cow.
7. He got home two hours late and said he had been _____ in the office by some special business.
8. There was a _____ of blood as the wound reopened.
9. The little girl was _____ the loss of her doll.
10. A big crowd _____ out of the baseball stadium.

【解答】 1. disdained 2. persevered 3. bias 4. hues 5. packet
6. sneaked 7. detained 8. gush 9. deplored 10. surged

本书由台湾学习出版公司
授权海南(三环)出版社在
大陆出版,翻印必究。

LESSON 3

预备测验

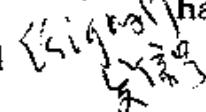
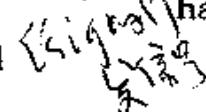
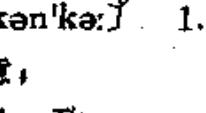
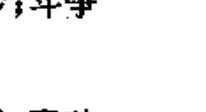
◎选出最适当的答案：

1. Too strong a sense of _____ hampered him from enjoying life.
(A) pleasure (B) humor (C) duty
2. They denounced him to the police as a(an) _____.
(A) observer (B) criminal (C) witness
3. A strange _____ pervaded the garden, like the hush before a storm.
(A) stillness (B) odor (C) feeling
4. They despoiled the villagers of their _____.
(A) diseases (B) visitors (C) belongings
5. A(An) _____ provided the only access to the attic.
(A) bandit (B) ladder (C) soldier

▲解 答▲
1. C 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. B

~~~~~《第一部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                       | MEANING                                | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| access [ə'ækses]<br>n. 1. 进入<br>② approach | 1. a way of getting to a place<br>2.接近 | The only access to the farm house is across the rice fields. 进入那农舍的唯一通路是穿越稻田。<br>Only high officials had access to the emperor. 只有显赫的官员才能接近皇帝。 |

| WORD                                                                                                      | MEANING                                                       | TYPICAL USE                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>beckon</b> ('bekən)   | sign by a motion<br>v. 招手或点头示 of the head or<br>意 hand        | The guide for visitors <b>beckoned</b> us to follow him.<br>导游招手叫我们跟着他。                               |
| <b>signal</b>            |                                                               |                                                                                                       |
| <b>concur</b> (kən'kər)  | 1. agree; be of<br>the same<br>opinion<br>v. 1. 同意;<br>意见一致   | I <b>concur</b> with the speaker in con-<br>demning every criminal. 我同意演<br>说者斥责罪犯。                   |
|                                                                                                           | 2. 同时发生                                                       | This summer two weeks of rain<br><b>concurred</b> with our vacation.<br>今夏我们两个星期的假期都下雨。               |
| <b>agree;</b>                                                                                             |                                                               |                                                                                                       |
| <b>denounce</b>          | speak against in<br>public; accuse;<br>denunciate; damn       | He was <b>denounced</b> as a coward<br>and traitor.<br>他被指责为懦夫和卖国贼。                                   |
| <b>accuse</b>                                                                                             |                                                               |                                                                                                       |
| <b>fray</b> (freɪ)     | 1. noisy quarrel;<br>fight                                    | The first blow makes the anger,<br>but the second makes the <b>fray</b> .<br>第一拳引起愤怒,第二拳招致争吵。         |
| v. 1. 争吵;斗争                                                                                               |                                                               |                                                                                                       |
|                                                                                                           | 2. 磨损;磨破                                                      |                                                                                                       |
| <b>combat,</b>         | 2. make ragged<br>or worn<br>along the<br>edge                | Long wear had <b>frayed</b> the collar<br>and cuffs of his old shirts.<br>长期的穿着使得他的旧衬衫的领口<br>和袖口磨损不堪。 |
| <b>shred</b>                                                                                              |                                                               |                                                                                                       |
| <b>hamper</b>          | get in the way<br>of; hold back;<br>impede; interfere<br>with | Heavy clothing <b>hampered</b> the<br>movements of the climbers.<br>笨重的衣服阻碍了登山者的行动。                   |
| <b>hinder</b>                                                                                             |                                                               |                                                                                                       |

| WORD                                                                   | MEANING                                           | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>malady</b><br>[mælədi]<br><b>n.</b> 疾病<br>回 <b>ailment</b>          | disease; sickness; illness; affliction; complaint | Cancer and tuberculosis are serious <b>maladies</b> in every country.<br>癌症和肺结核在每个国家都是严重的疾病。                       |
| <b>plop</b> [plɒp]<br><b>v.</b> 缓步或重步<br>在…走<br>回 <b>trudge</b>        | walk heavily or slowly                            | The old man was <b>plopping</b> wearily along the bank of the river. 那老人拖着疲惫的步子沿着河岸走。                              |
| <b>remnant</b><br>['remnənt]<br><b>n.</b> 残余; 遗物<br>回 <b>residue</b>   | a small part left; rest; remains                  | Since the factory moved, this town has only a <b>remnant</b> of its former population.<br>自从那家工厂移走后,这个小镇只剩下一些原先居民。 |
| <b>snore</b> [sno:]<br><b>v.</b> 发鼾声<br>回 <b>wheeze</b>                | breathe noisily when sleeping                     | The child with a cold in his nose <b>snored</b> all night.<br>小孩的鼻子着凉了,整夜发鼾声。                                      |
| <b>tinge</b> [tindʒ]<br><b>v.</b> 微染; 染以轻<br>淡的颜色<br>回 <b>tincture</b> | color slightly; tint; stain                       | Blood <b>tinged</b> the water as he washed his wound.<br>当他清洗伤口时,血把水染成红色。                                          |

**Exercise 3.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The two scientists, working separately and unknown to each other, had reached conclusions that \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Poor health and lack of money \_\_\_\_\_ his efforts to get a college education.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ to the mountain towns is often difficult because of poor roads.

4. The preacher \_\_\_\_\_ war, calling it immoral destruction.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ of the meal lay on the table when he had finished eating.

**【解答】** 1. concurred 2. hampered 3. Access 4. denounced  
5. Remnants

~~~~~《第二部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|---|
| ailment
('eilmənt)

n. 疾病
同 malady | pain or disease; trouble; distress | It was necessary for them to have remedies for their <i>ailments</i> .
给他们吃特效药治疗疾病是必要的。 |
| bicker ('bikə)

v. 争吵;争论
同 wrangle | quarrel, especially about small matters; argue | The children are <i>bickering</i> with each other about who is the tallest among them.
小孩们在互相争吵看谁最高。 |
| contrive
(kən'traiv)

v. 发明;设计
同 hatch | plan with cleverness or skill; invent; project | The inventor <i>contrived</i> a new kind of engine with fewer moving parts. 发明家设计一种新的引擎，含有较少的活动零件。 |
| dazzle (dæzl)

v. 以强光使目眩
同 glare | hurt (the eyes) with too bright or quick moving lights; daze | The bright light of the motor car on the dark country road <i>dazzled</i> my eyes. 在黑暗的乡村道路上，汽车照耀的灯光使我目眩。 |
| fumble
(fʌmbl)

v. 摸索;搜寻
同 grope | move fingers or hands awkwardly in search of something | She <i>fumbled</i> about in her handbag for a pen to write a memorandum. 她在手提包里摸索着找钢笔，想写个备忘录。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|--|
| impair (im'peə)
v. 损害
同 damage | make worse; weaken; harm | Poor food and hard work <i>impaired</i> her health and she became thin. 不好的食物和辛苦的工作损害她的健康,使她变瘦了。 |
| mortify
('mo:tifai)
v. 使感到羞辱;
使蒙屈辱
同 humiliate | wound
(a person's feelings);
degrade | The parents were <i>mortified</i> by their children's bad behavior before the guests.
孩子们在客人面前的不良行为,使父母亲蒙羞。 |
| predominant
(pri'dominənt)
adj. 主要的;
有势力的
同 outstanding | having more power, authority, or influence than others; salient | The United States became the <i>predominant</i> nation in the Western Hemisphere.
美国成为西半球主要的国家。 |
| sanitary
('sænitəri)
adj. 卫生的
同 hygienic | having to do with health; healthful | He worked to improve the <i>sanitary</i> conditions of slums.
他谋求改进贫民区的卫生情形。 |
| wallet ('wɔlit)
n. 皮包;皮夹
同 purse | a folding pocket-book, usually of leather | He always keeps a lot of money in his <i>wallet</i> .
他总是在钱夹内放许多钱。 |
| warrant
('worənt)
n. 正当的理由;
权利
同 assurance | proper reason for action; guarantee; permit; authority; right | Do you consider the wild behavior of the crowd was enough of a <i>warrant</i> for the police to use force? 你认为群众野蛮的行为足以使警察使用武力吗? |

Exercise 3.2 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The outlaws _____ a robbery of the cargo train.

2. The doctor made sure that the injection needle was _____.
 3. Two children ended their _____ and became friendly again.
 4. A mother is _____ when her child behaves badly in the church.
 5. Coming out of the dark theatre, we were _____ by the bright sun-light.

【解答】 1. contrived 2. sanitary 3. bicker 4. mortified
 5. dazzled

(第三部分)

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|--|
| allocate
('æləkeɪt)
v. 拨出;留下 | divide and give as shares; assign | The Ford Foundation <i>allocated</i> millions of dollars for cancer research. 福特基金会拨出几百万元作为癌症的研究。 |
| apportion | | |
| brawl (bro:l)
n. 争吵;打架 | a noisy and disorderly quarrel; | The <i>brawl</i> in the street could be heard in the house nearby. |
| fight | bicker; wrangle | 附近的房子都可听到街上的争吵声。 |
| cynical
('sinikəl)
adj. 怀疑人生的
价值的;讽刺的
刺的 | contemptuous; sneering; unbelieving; suspicious | The boys made several <i>cynical</i> remarks to cover up their disappointment at being left out of the play. |
| sarcastic | | 男孩子们冷嘲热讽地来掩盖他们不被允许参加游戏的失望。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|--|
| embellish
[im'belfiʃ]

v. 装饰；布置
同 adorn | add beauty to; decorate; ornament; beautify | She <i>embellished</i> the simple dress with colorful laces and ribbons.
她用花边和缎带来装饰她那平淡的服饰。 |
| gallant [ˈgælənt]

adj. 英勇的
同 splendid | brave and high-spirited; courageous; grand | The defence of the Alamo was a heroic action of <i>gallant</i> men. 艾勒摩防御战是勇者的英雄作为。 |
| immerse
[ɪ'me:s]

v. 浸入
同 plunge | dip or lower into a liquid until covered by it; merge; immerge | He <i>immerged</i> his aching feet in a bucket of cold water.
他把疼痛的双脚浸入一桶凉水中。 |
| ostentatious
[osten'teifəs]

adj. 夸张的；虚饰的
同 showy | done for display; intended to attract notice; pretentious | He rode his new bicycle up and in front of our house in an <i>ostentatious</i> way.
他骑了一部新的脚踏车，在我家前面夸耀地骑来骑去。 |
| presentiment
[pri'zentimənt]

n. 预感；预觉
同 foreboding | a feeling that something is about to happen | Soapy followed the man with a <i>presentiment</i> that luck would again run against him.
索皮跟随着那人，却有预感幸运将再次与他背道而驰。 |
| satisfy
['seifisit]

v. 使饱；使满足
同 surfeit | feed fully; satisfy fully; supply with too much; saturate | She was so <i>satiated</i> with bananas that she would not even look at one. 这女孩吃香蕉过多而生腻，故对香蕉看都不愿意看。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--------------------------------|--|--|
| undulate
(ʌndjuleɪt) | move in waves; rise and fall with a wavelike motion; billow; swing | The field of wheat was <i>undulating</i> in the breeze.
麦田在微风中起伏。 |
| v. 波动;起伏;
震动 | | |
| 回 wave | | |

Exercise 3.3 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. It is difficult to make friends with a person who is _____ about friendship.
2. He welcomed his friend in a(an) _____ manner, though he didn't like his visiting him.
3. I felt a strong _____ that my belief would finally give way.
4. That space has already been _____ for building a new hospital.
5. The grass was _____ like waves in the field.

【解答】 1. cynical 2. ostentatious 3. presentiment 4. allocated
5. undulating

《第四部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| apparel (ə'pærəl)
n. 衣服;装饰 | a person's outer clothing; suit; dress | A shop selling woman's <i>apparel</i> is at the corner of the street.
街角有一家妇女服饰店。 |
| 回 garment | | |
| cajole (kə'dʒoul)
v. 甜言蜜语诱惑 | persuade by pleasant words or flattery; urge | He <i>cajoled</i> his friends into deciding in his favor.
他诱惑朋友做有益于己的决定。 |
| 回 coax | | |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|---|
| discard
[dis'ka:d]

v. 抛弃
回 reject | give up as useless, or worn throw aside | You can discard your old coat but not your old friends.
你可以抛弃旧衣服,但不可抛弃老朋友。 |
| effete [e'fē:t]
<i>adj.</i> 疲惫的;
枯竭的
回 exhausted | no longer able to produce; worn out | During the middle ages, Greek civilization declined and became effete .
中世纪期间,希腊文明衰微且枯竭了。 |
| grudge [grʌdʒ]
<i>n.</i> 怨恨
回 resentment | ill will; sullen feeling (against) | She has had a grudge against me ever since I disagreed with her.
从我不赞成她之后,她对我怀恨在心。 |
| kidnap
['kidnæp]

v. 绑架;勒赎
回 abduct | steal or carry off a person (child) by force; take away; ravish | Four men kidnapped the little girl, but the police soon caught them and rescued the girl.
四个人绑架一女童,但是警察很快地抓到他们,解救了那个女孩。 |
| pact [pæk't]
<i>n.</i> 协定;公约
回 treaty | a solemn agreement; compact; contract; bargain | There is some hope that a peace pact will be signed between the two countries.
这两国间有签订和平公约的希望。 |
| pry [praɪ]

v. 细查;探问
回 peep | examine closely and curiously; spy; investigate; snoop | She prises too closely into the private life of her friends.
她太爱管她的朋友的私生活。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|---|
| scour (ˈskauə)
v. 1. 搜索 | 1. move quickly over in order to search something | Men <i>scoured</i> the whole country looking for the lost child. 人们巡行全城搜索迷失的孩子。 |
| ransack | 2. 磨亮;擦净 | The servant <i>scoured</i> the frying pan until it shone like silver. 服务生擦洗炸锅,直到它们闪闪如银为止。 |
| swagger (ˈswægə)
v. 昂首阔步 | walk with a swinging movement as if proud | He <i>swaggered</i> down the street after winning the fight. 打赢之后,他昂首阔步地沿着路走去。 |
| strut | | |
| vagary (ˈveigəri, ˌvæ'geəri)
n. 奇异的幻想; 妄想 | an unusual, purposeless or unexpected idea, act or thought; humor | The building of this house in the shape of the temple was a rich man's <i>vagary</i> . 这栋房屋庙宇式的外型,是一位富人的奇想。 |
| fancy | | |

Exercise 3. 4 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. My father repaired the toy that I had _____ as a useless thing.
2. She was always _____ into other people's affairs.
3. He _____ the town looking for the lost child, but he couldn't find him.
4. My outgoing friends were able to _____ the shy newcomer into attending the party.
5. I always feel she has a (an) _____ against me, although I do not know what wrong I've done to her.

【解答】 1. discarded 2. prying 3. scoured 4. cajole 5. grudge

~~~~~(第五部分)~~~~~

| WORD                                                                      | MEANING                                            | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>asset</b> [æsət]<br><i>n.</i> 有价值或有用的东西<br>回 <b>property</b>           | something that has value; possession; belongings   | Ability to get along with people is an <i>asset</i> in business.<br>在商业界,能与别人相处是可贵的。                            |
| <b>chasm</b> ['kæzəm]<br><i>n.</i> 深坑或裂缝; 利害冲突<br>回 <b>gap</b>            | a deep opening or crack in the earth; yawn; crater | There was a deep political <i>chasm</i> between the two countries which nearly led to a war.<br>两国间的政治冲突几乎导致战争。 |
| <b>despoil</b><br>[dis'pɔɪl]<br><i>v.</i> 夺取; 抢劫<br>回 <b>depredate</b>    | rob; steal; from; spoil                            | The cities of Greece and Asia were <i>despoiled</i> of their most valuable ornaments.<br>希腊与亚洲城市中最宝贵的装饰品被劫掠一空。  |
| <b>facetious</b><br>(fə'si:fəs)<br><i>adj.</i> 好开玩笑的<br>回 <b>humorous</b> | sly; joking; said in fun; jocular                  | I became angry with the little boy at his <i>facetious</i> remarks.<br>我对那小男孩的玩笑话感到生气。                          |
| <b>hurtle</b> ('hə:tł)<br><i>v.</i> 碰撞; 动手<br>回 <b>dash</b>               | move or rush with great speed; lunge; crash        | The wing of the airplane came off and the machine <i>hurtled</i> to the ground.<br>机翼脱落,于是飞机撞到地面。               |

| WORD                                                                                        | MEANING                                                             | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>larceny</b><br>〔lɑ:sni〕<br><i>n.</i> 盗窃; 盗窃罪<br>〔回〕 robbery                              | theft; stealing; the unlawful take or carrying away of the property | He wanted to be accused of <i>larceny</i> , because he <del>left</del> comfortable in prison.<br>他欲以盗窃罪被起诉, 因监狱令他觉得舒适。       |
| <b>pervade</b><br>〔pə(ə)'veid〕<br><i>v.</i> 遍布; 弥漫<br>〔回〕 spread                            | go or spread throughout; trate; diffuse; impregnate                 | He worked so hard that the weariness <i>pervaded</i> his whole body.<br>他努力工作, 以致全身疲倦。                                       |
| <b>recant</b> 〔ri'kænt〕<br><i>v.</i> 公然撤回或取消<br>〔回〕 retract                                 | take back formally or publicly; withdraw                            | Though he was tortured to make him change his religion, the prisoner would not <i>recant</i> .<br>那囚犯虽受酷刑迫他改变他的宗教信仰, 但他绝不改变。 |
| <b>shambles</b><br>〔ʃæmblz〕<br><i>n.</i> 混乱; 迷惑<br>〔回〕 confusion                            | general disorder; babel; bedlam                                     | He left his affairs in a complete <i>shambles</i> when he died.<br>当他死后, 他留下的东西一片混乱。                                         |
| <b>taboo</b> 〔tə'bu:]<br><i>n.</i> 禁忌; 禁止<br>〔回〕 prohibition                                | prohibition; interdiction; restriction                              | Eating human flesh is a <i>taboo</i> in civilized countries. 在文明的国度里, 吃人肉是被禁止的。                                              |
| <b>trappings</b><br>〔'træpiŋz〕<br><i>n.</i> 马的装饰物; horse; fittings<br>装饰<br>〔回〕 decorations | ornamental coverings for a horse; fittings                          | He wore all the <i>trappings</i> of high office.<br>他穿上所有高官的装饰物。                                                             |

**Exercise 3.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The enemy troops \_\_\_\_\_ the villages of their belongings.

2. The violent wind caused chimney-pots and roof-tiles to \_\_\_\_\_ down to the ground.
3. The radio voice was a \_\_\_\_\_ of several different operator's speaking at once.
4. Many questions and problems that were once \_\_\_\_\_ are now discussed openly.
5. The subversive ideas that \_\_\_\_\_ all these periodicals may do great harm.

【解答】 1. despoiled 2. hurtle 3. shambles 4. taboos 5. pervade

### 成果测验

**Exercise 3.6** 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. (A)impair      (B)weaken      (C)invalid      (D)injure
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. (A)cynical      (B)contemptuous (C)effete      (D)sneering
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. (A)infirmitiy      (B)ailment      (C)malady      (D)scourge
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. (A)healthful      (B)consecrated      (C)hygienic      (D)sanitary
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. (A)submerge      (B)plunge      (C)absolve      (D)immerse
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. (A)hinder      (B)impede      (C)slash      (D)hamper
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. (A)humorous      (B)facetious      (C)obstinate      (D)waggish
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. (A)assign      (B)allocate      (C)apportion (D)allay
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. (A)contrive      (B)scheme      (C)implore      (D)hatch
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. (A)ostentatious (B)gaudy (C)pretentious (D)prominent

【解答】 1. C 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. C 7. C 8. D 9. C 10. D

**Exercise 3.7** 阅读下面的句子,选出句中斜体词所代表的意义:

1. The teacher was *mortified* by his own inability to answer such a simple question.  
 (A) distressed (B) humiliated (C) surprised (D) satisfied
2. He has been suffering from a strange *malady* for a long time.  
 (A) screech (B) pageant (C) sound (D) ailment
3. I am not about to *cajole* you into the reception of my opinion.  
 (A) beseech (B) coax (C) imply (D) request
4. She was *cynical* about her husband's vow to quit smoking.  
 (A) distrustful (B) commenting (C) complaining (D) critical
5. Whoever violates the *taboo* will be stricken to death by unseen beings.  
 (A) regulation (B) ceremony (C) feast (D) prohibition
6. The electric wire is *fraying* and could be dangerous to handle.  
 (A) worn (B) burning (C) watering (D) magnetic
7. He had all the *trappings* of a cowboy, but he couldn't even ride a horse.  
 (A) technics (B) conditions (C) ornaments (D) qualities
8. The storekeeper *warranted* the quality of the eggs.  
 (A) doubted (B) guaranteed (C) examined (D) worried
9. She *embellished* her white hat with black belt and pink roses.  
 (A) filled (B) ornamented (C) added (D) exchanged
10. The *chasm* between England and the American colonies grew wider and wider until it finally resulted in the American Revolution.  
 (A) struggle (B) distance (C) gap (D) difference

**【解答】** 1. B 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. A 7. C 8. B 9. B 10. C

**Exercise 3.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的单词：

1. *gallant ship*

- (A) splendid (B) floating (C) fast (D) heavy

2. *a street brawl*

- (A) quarrel (B) accident (C) passage (D) ornament

3. *a trade pact*

- (A) exchange (B) policy (C) relation (D) agreement

4. *sanitary place*

- (A) sacred (B) clean (C) lonesome (D) vacant

5. *pry about the affairs*

- (A) wander (B) creep (C) peep (D) trudge

【解答】

1. A

2. A

3. D

4. B

5. C

**Exercise 3.9** 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：

#### VOCABULARY LIST

|         |           |          |             |
|---------|-----------|----------|-------------|
| fray    | dazzles   | beckoned | effete      |
| gallant | mortified | access   | pervade     |
| despoil | hurtle    | plodded  | predominant |

1. The only \_\_\_\_\_ to that building is along that muddy track.

2. The fleet of warships, gaily decorated with flags for the review, made a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ show.

3. To look straight at the headlights \_\_\_\_\_ the eyes.

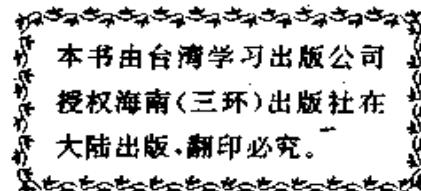
4. His old shirt was beginning to \_\_\_\_\_ at the cuffs.

5. In the eyes of priest, God seems to \_\_\_\_\_ all of creation in the world.

6. The teacher was \_\_\_\_\_ by his pupil's poor answer.

7. He stood waiting until the policeman \_\_\_\_\_ him on.
8. The Roman Empire was once strong, but it grew \_\_\_\_\_ when there were enough slaves to do all the work.
9. The \_\_\_\_\_ feature of his character is pride.
10. The old man \_\_\_\_\_ along the road, hardly able to lift each foot.

**【解答】** 1. access 2. gallant 3. dazzles 4. fray 5. pervade  
6. mortified 7. beckoned 8. effete 9. predominant  
10. plodded



## LESSON 4

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. The fun of playing the game was a greater *incentive* than the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) fighting      (B) participation      (C) prize
2. The spy went in the *guise* of a \_\_\_\_\_ and was not recognized by the enemy.  
 (A) monk      (B) sanitary      (C) pretention
3. He *dissipated* his large fortune in a few years of heavy \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) working      (B) trial      (C) spending
4. You are always *badgering* me with such a(an) \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) amicable greeting (B) silly question      (C) sincere praise
5. He got too near the \_\_\_\_\_ and *singed* his long beard.  
 (A) door      (B) water      (C) fire

△解 答 △

1. C 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. C

~~~~~《第一部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|---|
| abdicate
[ə'bdaɪkeɪt]
v. 放弃权力
④ relinquish | give up (office, power, or authority); surrender | When the king <i>abdicated</i> his throne, his brother <u>succeeded</u> him. 国王逊位时，其弟继承王位。 |
| accrue [ə'krʊ]
v. 自然增殖；自然增加
④ accumulate | some as a natural product or result; add up; be received; amass | Ability to think clearly will <i>accrue</i> to you from good habits of study. 你的思考能力将因良好的学习习惯而自然增进。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|---|
| badger ('bædʒə) | keep on annoying or teasing; bother or question persistently | The salesman has been <i>badgering</i> my father for two weeks to buy a new car. 二个多礼拜来, 那推销员一直缠着我父亲, 要求他买新车。 |
| v. 困扰
tease | | |
| baffle ('bæfl) | make effective action impossible by confusing; hinder; thwart | They succeeded in <i>baffling</i> the enemy's attack plans. 他们成功地扰乱了敌人的攻击计划。 |
| v. 使困惑;
使迷惑
bewilder | | |
| conjecture
(kən'dʒektʃə) | guess; speculate; suspect | He <i>conjectured</i> that his new stocks would rise on the stock market. 他猜他的新股票价格在股票市场上升。 |
| v. 推测; 猜想
surmise | | |
| derange
(di'veindʒ) | disturb the order or arrangement of; throw into confusion | The poor woman's mind has been <i>deranged</i> for many years. 那女人已精神错乱好几年了。 |
| v. 使错乱; 扰乱
upset | | |
| fiend (fi:nd) | an evil spirit; a very wicked person; witch | The natives thought the explorer was possessed by a <i>fiend</i> . 土著们认为探险家被恶魔附身。 |
| n. 恶魔;
穷凶极恶的人
devil | | |
| pine (pain) | long eagerly; waste away through sorrow or disease; wither | The mother was <i>pining</i> to see her son and daughter. 母亲渴望见到她的子女。 |
| v. 渴望; 苦思
yearn
n. 松树 | | |
| smother ('smʌðə) | prevent from breathing freely; kill by depriving of air; throttle | The gas almost <i>smothered</i> the coal miners but they got out in time. 煤矿工差点被瓦斯闷死, 好在他们及时逃出。 |
| v. 使窒息; 闷死
choke | | |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|---|
| throb [θrɒb] | beat rapidly or strongly; flutter; | The long climb up the mountain made her heart <i>throb</i> rapidly. 长程爬山使她心跳加速。 |
| v. 悸动；跳动
n. 脉搏 | palpitate | |

Exercise 4.1 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. The dead man had been _____ by smoke from the chimney.
2. Your heart will _____ when you are excited with terror.
3. The thief _____ our pursuit by locking us in the house before escaping.
迷路
4. If you put your money in the bank, interest _____.
accrues
5. The origin of the human race is a matter of pure _____.
conjecture

【解答】 1. smothered 2. throb 3. baffled 4. accrues 5. conjecture

~~~~~(第二部分)~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|-------------------------|---|--|
| broth [bro(θ)θ] | a thin soup made from water in which meat, fish or vegetable have been boiled | Many people usually drink hot broth when they are sick. 很多人在生病时喝热的肉汤。 |
| n. 煮肉的清汤
n. 汤 | | |
| crevice [krevɪs] | a narrow split or cut; cranny | Some tiny plants grow in the crevice of the stone wall. 有些小植物从石墙的裂缝中长出来。 |
| n. 裂缝；缺口
n. 裂缝 | | |
| demean [di'mi:n] | lower in the dignity or standing; humble; debase | The duke's son <i>demeaned</i> himself by doing manual labor with his servants. 公爵的儿子降低自己的身份和佣人一起做工。 |
| v. 贬抑；降低
v. 降低 | | |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|---|
| foster (fəstə)
n. 养育;看护
□ nurse | bring up; care for fondly; rear; cherish | We <i>fostered</i> the young girl while her mother was in hospital. 当这小女孩的母亲在医院时,我们照顾她。 |
| incentive (in'sentiv)
n. 刺激;鼓励
□ stimulus | a thing that urges a person on; a cause of action or effort; motive | Our country has prospered by various <i>incentive</i> systems. 我们的国家因各种不同的奖励制度而繁荣起来。 |
| maze (meiz)
n. 迷宫
□ labyrinth | a network of paths through which it is hard to find one's way. | A guide led us through the <i>maze</i> of tunnels in the cave. 向导带领我们通过山洞里如迷宫般的隧道。 |
| pore (pɔ:)
1. v. 熟读;熟视
2. n. 毛孔;孔 | 1. gaze earnestly or steadily; study or give close attention to; ponder
2. a very small opening | She <i>pored over</i> the picture book in silence enjoying the various colors. 她默默地读那图画书,欣赏着各种不同的颜色。
Like human skin, soil has holes that are called <i>pored</i> . 和人类的皮肤一样,土壤也有许多洞叫做毛细孔。 |
| rubbish (rʌbiʃ)
n. 废物;垃圾
□ trash | waste material to be thrown away; garbage; junk | Pick up the <i>rubbish</i> and throw it in the garbage can. 把废物捡起来丢进垃圾桶内。 |
| speculate ('spekjuleit)
v. 沉思;思索
□ meditate | think long and carefully about some subject; consider; reflect | We don't need to <i>speculate about</i> the possible winner in the game. 我们不必去想谁可能是这场比赛的赢家。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---------------------------------|--|---|
| transfix
[træns'fiks] | fasten or fix by piercing through with something pointed | Sweet music caught and held him <i>transfixed</i> against the iron fence. |
| v. 刺穿 | | 甜美的音乐穿过了铁墙而紧紧地扣住他的心弦。 |
| ■ petrify | | |

Exercise 4.2 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- Many books and magazines are filled with cheap, sensational and vulgar _____.
- After waiting a long time, I opened a little _____ in the door.
- His interest in my scholastic records gave me a (an) _____ and I worked twice as hard.
- They _____ about the author's hidden meaning.
- She was lost in a(an) _____ of narrow winding streets.

【解答】 1. rubbish 2. crevice 3. incentive 4. speculated 5. maze

《第三部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--------------------------------|---|--|
| anomaly
[ə'nəməli] | something abnormal; unusual irregularity | A bird that cannot fly is an <i>anomaly</i> .
一只不能飞的鸟是异常的。 |
| n. 反常之事物 | | |
| ■ abnormality | | |
| converge
[kən've:dʒ] | tend to meet at a point; be directed towards a single point | If you look at the end of your nose, your eyes <i>converge</i> .
你如望着你的鼻尖,你的两眼就向一点集中。 |
| v. 集中于一点 | | |
| ■ focus | | |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| duplicate
(dju:plikit)
<i>adj.</i>
完全相同的；
副的 | same; self-same;
alike; twofold | We have a <i>duplicate</i> key to the front door.
我们有一把开前门用的相同的钥匙。 |
| double | | |
| epoch ('epok)
<i>n.</i> 纪元;时代 | a period of historical time; the starting point of such a period | There were few peaceful <i>epoches</i> in the history of our country. 我国的历史中,很少有和平的时期。 |
| age | | |
| gaunt (gɔ:nt)
<i>adj.</i> 憔悴的;骨瘦如柴的 | very thin and bony; with hollow eyes and a starved look; lean | Hunger and suffering from cold had made the lost hikers <i>gaunt</i> . 迷路的徒步旅行者因饥饿和寒冷而骨瘦如柴。 |
| haggard | | |
| incessant
(in'sesnt)
<i>adj.</i> 不断的 | never stopping; unceasing; interminable; unending; timeless | The <i>incessant</i> barking of the dog kept him awake through the night.
不断的狗叫声使他整夜未能入睡。 |
| continuous | | |
| mute (mju:t)
<i>adj.</i> 沉默的;
无言的 | without speech; making no sound; dumb; unable to speak | Though the teacher asked a simple question about her parents, the little girl stood <i>mute</i> with embarrassment.
虽然老师只问了一个有关她父母亲的简单问题,但那小女孩无言地站着,似乎很困窘的样子。 |
| silent | | |
| partisan
(pa:tis'æn)
<i>n.</i> 帮伙;同党者 | a strong supporter of a person, party or cause; zealot | He was a passionate <i>partisan</i> of these people and had organized a Worker's Union. 他是这些人的热心伙伴,组织了一个工会。 |
| defender | | |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|--|
| scan [skæn]
v. 1. 细察；审视
2. 勿匆一阅
3. 困 contemplate, overlook | 1. examine carefully and closely; regard; pore over
2. glance at quickly; read hurriedly; skim
3. pierce or wound with a pointed weapon | The parents of the sick boy scanned the doctor's face for a sign of hope. 病孩的父母审视医生的脸,想查明是否有希望的征兆。
She scanned the newspaper in a few minutes. 她在几分钟之内把报纸大略翻阅一下。
He stabbed a piece of meat from the plate with his fork.
他用叉子从盘中叉下一片肉来。 |
| stab [stæb]
v. 刺；刺伤
4. pierce | | |
| stab [stæb]
v. 刺；刺伤
4. pierce | | |

Exercise 4.3 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Railway lines seem to _____ when one looks at them from a distance.
2. A person's lungs are _____, but he has only one heart.
3. The _____ of his position is that he is very famous, but still doesn't make much money.
4. They _____ the mountain side for any sign of the climbers.
5. The invention of the steam engine marks a(an) _____ in the growth of history.

【解答】 1. converge 2. duplicate 3. anomaly 4. scanned 5. epoch

《第四部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|--|
| botch [bɒtʃ]
v. 因工作笨拙而弄坏
5. ruin | spoil by poor work; do some things badly | I tried to cook a nice dinner, but I'm afraid I've rather botched it. 我想煮一顿美好的晚餐,但却恐怕把它弄坏了。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|------------------------------|--|--|
| chafe (tʃeɪf) | make sore by rubbings or scraping; rub to make warm | Her new shoes <i>chafed</i> the skin on both her feet.
她的新皮鞋把她两只脚弄痛了。 |
| v. 擦热；擦痛
abrade | | |
| dissipate ('dɪsipeɪt) | 1. spread in different directions
v. 1. 使消散；驱散
2. 浪费 | After a brisk morning wind <i>dissipate</i> the clouds, the sky was clear all day. 早上一阵强风把云吹散后，一整天天空万里无云。 |
| scatter, waste | 2. spend foolishly; waste on things of little value | The foolish son <i>dissipated</i> his father's fortune by spending it on drinking and gambling.
愚蠢的儿子把父亲的财产乱花在喝酒和赌博上。 |
| efface (i'feɪs) | rub out; do a way with; wipe out; destroy | The inscriptions on the ancient monuments have been <i>effaced</i> by time. 古代石碑上的文字,已经因时间长久而被磨蚀去。 |
| v. 消除；抹杀
erase | | |
| glint (glint) | a gleam; sparkle; glitter | There was a <i>glint</i> in her eye that showed she was angry.
她眼中有生气的眼神。 |
| n. 闪烁；闪光
flash | | |
| onerous ('ənərəs) | hard to take or carry; oppressive; troublesome; burdensome | Overtime work is often <i>onerous</i> , though it is well paid. 加班的工作报酬很好,但常常是很繁重的。 |
| adj. 繁重的；
烦苛的
arduous | | |
| iterate ('ɪtəreɪt) | say again or repeatedly; reiterate | The girl did not move though the policeman <i>iterated</i> his command that she go. 警察重述他的命令叫她走,她还是没走。 |
| v. 重做；重述
repeat | | |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|---|
| propensity
[prə'pensiti]
<i>n.</i> 倾向；嗜好；
习性 | a natural inclina-
tion or bent;
leaning | Most boys have a <i>propensity</i> of
playing with machinery.
大多数男孩子都有玩机械的倾向。 |
| tendency | | |
| singe (sing3)
<i>v.</i> 微烧；烫焦 | burn a little;
sear; scald | Mother <i>singed</i> chicken to get rid
of hairs.
母亲把鸡稍稍烧一下，以便去毛。 |
| scorch | | |
| strut (strʌt)
<i>v.</i> 昂首阔步 | walk in a vain,
important, or af-
fected manner; | The little boy put on his father's
medals and <i>strutted</i> around the
room. 那孩子佩上他父亲的勋章，
在房内昂首阔步。 |
| swagger | parade; prance | |
| unravel
[ʌn'rævəl]
<i>v.</i> 解开；阐明 | solve; make clear | There are many kinds of diseases
that medical science is yet to <i>un-
ravel</i> . 有许多种疾病医学尚无法
解决。 |
| solve | | |

Exercise 4.4 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

- It takes many years to _____ the terrible memories of war.
- He is engaged in the _____ job of correcting hundreds of themes a week.
- The careless boy made so many mistakes making his model airplane that he completely _____ the job.
- She _____ the meat over a high flame.
- The candidate _____ about the room like a latter-day Napoleon.

【解答】 1. efface 2. onerous 3. botched 4. signed 5. strutted

《第五部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| bellow ('belou)
v. 大声呼叫；怒吼
回 shout | shout loudly with anger, or with pain; roar | He <i>bellowed</i> in pain when the hammer came down on his finger. 当铁锤砸到手指时,他痛得大叫。 |
| cloak (klouk)
n. 1. 宽大有袖或无袖的外衣
回 mantle

2. 掩饰; 隐匿 | 1. a loose outer garment with or without sleeves

2. something which covers, hides or keeps secret | The horseback rider drew his <i>cloak</i> tightly around him in the rain. 在雨中,马背上的骑士把外衣拉紧。

His friendly behavior was a <i>cloak</i> for his evil intention. 他友善的行为掩饰他的恶意。 |
| devout (di'veaut)
adj. 虔诚的
回 pious | paying attention to religious duties; devoted to religion | The ministry was a very <i>devout</i> man and devoted his whole life to Christian mission work. 那位牧师是位虔诚的教徒,把他的一生献于基督教传教工作。 |
| guise (gaiz)
n. 装束; 外貌
回 appearance | style of dress; outward appearance | A man appeared at the castle gate in the <i>guise</i> of a woodcutter. 有一个人以樵夫的装束出现在城堡的大门口。 |
| latent ('leitənt)
adj. 隐藏的; 不易被察觉的
回 concealed | present but not active; hidden; covert | The power of a grain of wheat to grow into a plant remains <i>latent</i> if it is not planted. 如果不种植的话,一颗麦子长成一株植物的力量仍然潜在着。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| pawn (pɔ:n)
v. 典当;抵押
n. 固 | leave something with another person as security for borrowed money that will be repaid; pledge | He <i>pawned</i> his watch to buy food until he could get a job. 他把表当了去买食物,直到他有工作再赎回来。 |
| quake (kweik)
v. 震动;战栗
n. 固 | shake or tremble; violate | When the cannon was fired, the earth <i>quaked</i> under his feet. 当开炮时,地在他脚下震动。 |
| sequel ('sikwəl)
n. 继续;结果
n. 固 | that which follows; continuation | Famine has often been the <i>sequel</i> of war.
饥饿常是战争的结果。 |
| salvage ('sælvɪdʒ)
n. 对海上遇险的船舶、船员及货物的救护
n. 固 | the act of saving a ship or its cargo from wreck or capture | After the ship sank, <i>salvage</i> of its cargo was impossible. 船沉了之后,货物是不可能被救起来的。 |
| virtual ('vɜ:tjuəl)
adj. 实质上的;
事实上的
n. 固 | being something in effect though not in name; real | The battle was won with so great a loss of soldiers that it was a <i>virtual</i> defeat. 该仗的获胜损失兵员甚多;故实际等于是败仗。 |
| wizard ('wɪzəd)
n. 男巫
n. 固 | a man supposed to have magical power; enchanter | He does things that are marvellous or apparently impossible; he is a <i>wizard</i> . 他能做奇异的或显然不可能的事;他真是个巫师。 |

Exercise 4.5 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. One of the most important aims of education is to develop students' _____ abilities to the utmost extent.

2. His television set was _____ to pay his room rent.
3. He _____ with pain when the tooth was pulled out.
4. She referred to the expected decease of her mother, and the gloomy _____ of funeral rites.
5. There is nothing new here; just the same old ideas in a different _____.

【解答】 1. latent 2. pawned 3. bellowed 4. sequel 5. guise

成 果 测 验

Exercise 4.6 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词：

- _____ 1. (A)demon (B)witch (C)fiend (D)devil
- _____ 2. (A)prediction (B)inclination (C)propensity (D)tendency
- _____ 3. (A)stroll (B)strut (C)swagger (D)stutter
- _____ 4. (A)relinquish (B)abdicate (C)debase (D)surrender
- _____ 5. (A)virtual (B)righteous (C)real (D)actual
- _____ 6. (A)surge (B)scorch (C)sing (D)sear
- _____ 7. (A)baffle (B)dissemble (C)mystify (D)perplex
- _____ 8. (A)quake (B)sting (C)shiver (D)shudder
- _____ 9. (A)labyrinth (B)tyro (C)maze (D)perplexity
- _____ 10. (A)temporary (B)covert (C)latent (D)potential

【解答】 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. B 6. A 7. B 8. B 9. B 10. A

Exercise 4.7 阅读下面的句子,选出句中斜体词所代表的意义:

1. Sudden illness *deranged* our plan for a trip.
 (A)delayed (B)amended (C)disturbed (D)influenced
2. The boy *iterated* his assurance that he would be very careful with my bicycle.
 (A)proclaimed (B)urged (C)stressed (D)repeated
3. Tom has been *badgering* his big brother to buy him a new bicycle.
 (A)teasing (B)demanding (C)suggesting (D)forcing
4. *Salvage* of the furniture was hampered by the heat of the flames.
 (A)protection (B)rescue (C)alignment (D)concealment
5. His mother *scanned* his face to see if he was telling the truth.
 (A)indicated (B)scrutinized (C)carassed (D)penetrated
6. Among the *sequels* of the party were many stomach aches.
 (A)diseases (B)expectations (C)consequences (D)foods
7. The odd noises and flashes of light in the empty house completely *baffled* him.
 (A)horrified (B)surrounded (C)perplexed (D)surprised
8. A young woman of modest *guise* was standing before a shop window.
 (A)appearance (B)height (C)age (D)behavior
9. The *incessant* noise from the factory kept me awake all night.
 (A)irritating (B)shrill (C)continuous (D)uncomfortable
10. The male bird *strutted* in front of the female bird.
 (A)swaggered (B)stopped (C)crouched (D)screeched

【解答】 1. C 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. B 6. C 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. A

Exercise 4.8 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的词：**1. *mute* letter**

- (A) capital (B) last (C) silent (D) small

2. *latent* period

- (A) sluggish (B) hidden (C) facetious (D) tardy

3. *gaunt* face

- (A) lean (B) fat (C) large (D) bright

4. *sequel* of a drama

- (A) development (B) performance (C) continuation (D) semblance

5. *onerous* duty

- (A) unique (B) honorable (C) common (D) arduous

【解答】 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. D

Exercise 4.9 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：**VOCABULARY LIST**

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------|------------|------------|
| conjecturing | pined | converged | demean |
| efface | baffled | sequel | propensity |
| cloak | dissipate | transfixed | scanned |

1. The attention of all the audience _____ on the screen as soon as the motion picture started.
2. Day and night she _____ for her departed mother.
3. She would never _____ the memory of her dead child.
4. Don't _____ yourself by doing such a dishonorable thing.
5. Famine and disease are sometimes the _____ of floods or war.
6. The examination _____ me completely and I couldn't answer it.
7. She looks more attractive in a(an) _____ than in a coat.

8. He had a(an) _____ to blame everything on his little brother.
9. I don't agree with his _____ that the government will lose the next election.
10. He was _____ to the spot when I told him the terrible news.

【解答】 1. converged 2. pined 3. efface 4. demean 5. sequel
6. baffled 7. cloak 8. propensity 9. conjecturing
10. transfixed

本书由台湾学习出版公司
授权海南(三环)出版社在
大陆出版,翻印必究。

LESSON 5

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. The _____ man was *appeased* when they said they were sorry.
 (A) coward (B) angry (C) great
2. More than a thousand people were _____ in the *massacre*.
 (A) gathered (B) captured (C) killed
3. She worked herself up into a *frenzy* because she thought she'd miss her _____.
 (A) job (B) train (C) baby
4. At last she *surmised* from his _____ from school that there's something wrong with him.
 (A) friend (B) absence (C) compliment
5. A leader must take _____ unless he is *incapacitated*.
 (A) example (B) prestige (C) command

△解 答 △
1. B 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. C

~~~~~《第一部分》~~~~~

| WORD                          | MEANING                                                             | TYPICAL USE                                                                    |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>admonish</b><br>[əd'monɪʃ] | warn of a fault; advise against doing something;<br>v. 警告<br>advise | He <i>admonished</i> his friend not to be late for his work.<br>他警告他的朋友工作不可迟到。 |
|                               | forewarn                                                            |                                                                                |

| WORD                                                            | MEANING                                                 | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>bide</b><br>[baɪd]<br><br>v. 等待<br><br>同 remain              | wait for a long time until the right moment; wait       | He seems to be doing nothing, but really he's just <i>biding</i> his time. 他好象无事可做,其实他在等待良机。                                                                 |
| <b>condone</b><br>[kəʊndən]<br><br>v. 宽恕;赦免<br><br>同 excuse     | forgive (wrong action or behavior); overlook; pass over | A man who cheats on his income tax and on his expense account tends to <i>condone</i> these practices in his friends.<br><br>一个在所得稅和費用帳戶上做手脚的人,有原谅他朋友如是做的倾向。 |
| <b>designate</b><br>[dezɪgnet]<br><br>v. 指出;指示<br><br>同 appoint | mark out; point out; select for duty or other position  | I <i>designate</i> you to act for me while I am away.<br><br>我指定你在我不在时代理我。                                                                                   |
| <b>fend</b> [fend]<br><br>v. 抵挡;抵御<br><br>同 defend              | defend oneself from; take care of; provide for          | Most animals let their young <i>fend</i> for themselves at an early age. 大部份的动物让年轻的一代在年幼时保护自己。                                                               |
| <b>hardy</b> ['ha:dɪ]<br><br>adj. 强壮的<br><br>同 robust           | able to bear hard treatment;<br><br>strong              | Only <i>hardy</i> plants will survive the severe cold in the Arctic area. 只有强壮的植物才能忍受北极地区的酷寒而生存下来。                                                           |
| <b>limber</b> ('limbə)<br><br>v. 使(自身)变柔<br>软灵活<br><br>同 supple | make flexible                                           | Baseball players do exercises at the beginning of the season in order to <i>limber</i> themselves up.<br><br>棒球选手在球季开始时做练习,以使身体灵活。                           |

| WORD                                                                      | MEANING                                                                    | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>philanthropy</b><br>[fi'lænθrəpi]<br><i>n.</i> 慈善心<br>回 charity        | love of mankind; practical sympathy and benevolence                        | You must pay in humiliation of spirit for every benefit received at the hands of <i>philanthropy</i> .<br>你必须回报以谦虚的精神,因为每一既得的利益受自慈善心。 |
| <b>recollect</b><br>[rekə'lekt]<br><i>v.</i> 记起;忆起<br>回 recall            | remember (something past); call to mind again                              | Can you <i>recollect</i> the name of the author of <i>Ivanhoe</i> ?<br>你能想起《劫后英雄传》的作者名字吗?                                             |
| <b>smite</b> [smait]<br><i>v.</i> 打;击<br>回 affect <i>smote</i><br>smitten | strike hard; have a powerful sudden effect on                              | He was <i>smitten</i> with the view that he stopped and took out his camera. 他被这景象所震撼,所以停下来拿出照相机。                                     |
| <b>testimony</b><br>['testiməni]<br><i>n.</i> 证言;口供<br>回 proof            | evidence; a solemn declaration, often one made by a witness in a law-court | According to the <i>testimony</i> of the medical profession, the health of the nation is improving.<br>据医学宣称,该国的国民健康正在进步中。            |

*Exercise 5. 1* 从第一部分中找出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He is stiff when he begins to skate, but \_\_\_\_\_ up easily.
2. These x-marks on the drawing \_\_\_\_\_ all the possible entrances to the castle.
3. The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ the boys not to be late for the athletic meeting.
4. A few \_\_\_\_\_ men broke the ice on the pond and had a swim.
5. The sound of an explosion \_\_\_\_\_ our ears last night.

【解答】 1. limbers 2. designate 3. admonished 4. hardy 5. smote

《第二部分》

| WORD                                                         | MEANING                                                           | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ale</b> [eɪl]<br>n. 麦酒(一种啤酒)<br>回 ginger                  | a kind of beer; an alcoholic drink similar to beer; lager; porter | He like the bitter taste of the <b>ale</b> ; beer is his favorite drink.<br>他喜欢麦酒苦苦的味道; 啤酒是他喜爱的饮料。                                                      |
| <b>blend</b> [blend]<br>v. 混合; 混杂<br>回 combine               | mix together; mix thoroughly; mingle                              | <b>Blend</b> the butter and the sugar before adding other ingredients of the cake. 在加蛋糕的其它成分之前, 先把奶油和糖混合一下。                                             |
| <b>carnivorous</b><br>[ka:nɪvərəs]<br>adj. 食肉的<br>回 cannibal | flesh-eating                                                      | The <b>carnivorous</b> animals are characterized especially by large, sharp canine teeth.<br>肉食动物的特征是大而尖的犬齿。                                            |
| <b>denizen</b><br>['denɪzn]<br>n. 公民; 居民<br>回 inhabitant     | a person or animal that lives in a place; occupant                | The common English sparrow is a <b>denizen</b> of America; it was first brought from Europe to America about 1850.<br>美洲的英国种麻雀是外来的, 大约在1850年第一次由欧洲带到美洲。 |
| <b>frenzy</b><br>['frenzi]<br>n. 暴怒; 狂乱<br>回 ferment         | near madness; mental derangement; very great excitement           | She was in a <b>frenzy</b> of grief when she heard that her child was missing.<br>当她听到她的孩子走失时, 她伤心得快发狂。                                                 |

| WORD                                                                | MEANING                                                                                    | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>incapacitate</b><br>[ɪn'keɪpəsɪteɪt]<br>v. 使不能；使不适于<br>同 disable | limit in ability, power or fitness; paralyze                                               | The player's injury <i>incapacitated</i> him for participating in the football match.<br>运动员的伤势使得他无法参加足球比赛。                                                                |
| <b>massacre</b><br>['mæsəkə]<br>v. 大屠杀<br>同 slaughter               | slaughter of people or animals; pitilessly kill without mercy                              | The hunters came from the East to <i>massacre</i> the buffalos of the plains, killing several million in a short time. 来自东部的猎人屠杀平原的水牛，在很短的时间内就杀了好几百万头。                     |
| <b>ponder</b> ('pɒndə)<br>v. 考虑；沉思<br>同 meditate                    | think about deeply; consider seriously; muse                                               | When I asked his advice, he <i>pondered</i> the matter and then told me not to go.<br>当我询问他的意见时，他考虑一下那件事，然后告诉我不要去。                                                         |
| <b>riddle</b> ('ridl)<br>不可解之问题；谜<br>同 enigma                       | a puzzling question, statement or problem, usually as a game or pastime; puzzle; conundrum | To the <i>riddle</i> "What walks on four legs in the morning, two legs at noon, and three legs in the evening?" the answer is "man." 谜题：什么东西早上用四只脚走路，中午用两只脚，黄昏用三只脚？答案是“人”。 |
| <b>spank</b> [spæŋk]<br>v. 打<br>同 beat                              | strike with quick force; blow with the open hand; hit                                      | The father <i>spanked</i> the naughty child for his bad manners.<br>父亲因那顽皮小孩的坏行为而打他。                                                                                       |

| WORD                            | MEANING                                            | TYPICAL USE                                                           |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>totter</b> ('tɔ:tə)<br>v. 蹒跚 | stand or walk with shaky, unsteady steps; fal- ter | The old man <i>tottered</i> across the room and sat down on the sofa. |
| <b>stagger</b>                  |                                                    | 那老人蹒跚地走过房间,然后坐在沙发上。                                                   |

**Exercise 5.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The crowd was in a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ after the home team scored the winning goal.
2. The king ordered all the infants in the country to be \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Before casting his vote, a responsible and mature citizen should \_\_\_\_\_ his choice of candidates.
4. A bartender must know how to \_\_\_\_\_ different kinds of drinks.
5. The famous \_\_\_\_\_ of the Sphinx was an enigma that only Oedipus could interpret.

【解答】 1. frenzy 2. massacred 3. ponder 4. blend 5. riddle

### ~~~~~(第三部分)~~~~~

| WORD                                                            | MEANING                                                                        | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>appease</b> (ə'pi:z)<br>v. 使平静,安静<br>n. placate              | make calm or quiet; tranquilize                                                | He tried to <i>appease</i> the crying child by giving him candy.<br>他试图以糖果安抚哭泣的小孩。                                                       |
| <b>catastrophe</b><br>(kə'tæstrəfi)<br>n. 异常的大灾祸<br>n. calamity | a sudden, unexpected, and terrible event that causes great suffering; disaster | The war was a terrible <i>catastrophe</i> in which many people died and many buildings were destroyed.<br>战争是可怕的大灾祸,其间有许多人丧失生命,许多建筑物被摧毁。 |

| WORD                                                   | MEANING                                                        | TYPICAL USE                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>daunt</b> (dɔ:nt)<br>v. 恐吓;使失去<br>勇气或信心             | cause to lose courage or the will to act; dishearten           | He felt completely <i>daunted</i> by the difficulties that faced him.<br>他对面临的困难感到完全的气馁。             |
| <b>dismay</b>                                          | hearten                                                        |                                                                                                      |
| <b>gape</b> (geip)<br>v. 张嘴注视<br><b>stare, gawk</b>    | stare with the mouth open; yawn                                | The crowd <i>gaped</i> at the daring tricks performed by the tightrope walker.<br>观众们张口注视着走绳索人大胆的表演。 |
| <b>duration</b><br>(djuə'reiʃən)<br>n. 持续的时间           | length of time; the time during which anything continues; term | He will be in the hospital for the <i>duration</i> of the school year.<br>整个学年中他都会呆在医院里。             |
| <b>period</b>                                          |                                                                |                                                                                                      |
| <b>implore</b> (im'plɔ:)<br>v. 哀求;苦求<br><b>entreat</b> | beg something for; beseech                                     | We <i>implored</i> him to act before it was too late.<br>我们苦求他及时行动。                                  |
| <b>muffle</b> (mʌfl)<br>v. 围住;将…蒙<br>起以使声音<br>低沉       | wrap in something in order to soften or stop the sound; stifle | She <i>muffled</i> her throat in a warm scarf not to catch a cold.<br>她用一温暖的围巾围起脖子,以免感冒。             |
| <b>wrap</b>                                            |                                                                |                                                                                                      |
| <b>prank</b> (præŋk)<br>n. 戏谑;恶作剧<br><b>trick</b>      | playful trick; a piece of mischief                             | On April Fool's day people often play <i>pranks</i> on each other.<br>在愚人节人们彼此戏谑。                    |
| <b>saunter</b> ('so:ntə)<br>v. 闲逛;漫步<br><b>stroll</b>  | walk slowly and idly; amble                                    | Soapy took the umbrella and <i>sauntered</i> off with it slowly.<br>索皮拿着雨伞闲逛。                        |

| WORD                                 | MEANING                     | TYPICAL USE                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>trickle</b> (‘trikl) <i>n.</i> 细流 | a thin flow or stream; ooze | There was a <i>trickle</i> of blood from the wound on his face.<br>他脸上的伤处有鲜血渗出。 |
| 同 <b>drip</b>                        |                             |                                                                                 |

**Exercise 5.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. A land reform program benefited the poor but it was a \_\_\_\_\_ for rich landowners.
2. She \_\_\_\_\_ the ball so that it would not awaken the family.
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ at the tall man, thinking that he might be her younger brother.
4. He served in the army for the \_\_\_\_\_ of World War I.
5. To \_\_\_\_\_ my angry neighbor, I offered to make good the damage.

【解答】 1. catastrophe 2. muffled 3. gaped 4. duration 5. appease

~~~~~(第四部分)~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|---|
| astound (əs’taund)
<i>v.</i> 使惊异 | shock with alarm or surprise; surprise very greatly | She was <i>astounded</i> by the news that she had won the speech contest.
她听到自己赢了演讲比赛的消息,感到十分惊讶。 |
| 同 amaze | | |
| clan (klæn)
<i>n.</i> 宗族;部落 | a group of families with a common ancestor | The people living in that valley are all members of one <i>clan</i> .
住在那山谷的都是同一部落的人。 |
| 同 tribe | | |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|---|
| distort
[dɪ'stɔ:t]
v. 歪曲;扭曲
同 falsify | change from the truth; turn from the true meaning; misrepresent | Newspaper accounts of political and international affairs are often <i>distorted</i> .
报上所登载的政治及国际事件常是歪曲的。 |
| entrust
[in'trust]
v. 信托;交托
同 commit | charge with a trust; trust | While travelling, they <i>entrusted</i> their children to the care of a baby sitter.
旅行时,他们把孩子交给保姆看管。 |
| glutton [ˈglʌtn]
n. 贪食,贪多者
同 gormandizer | a greedy eater; a person who eats too much; gorger | Sometimes he gets hungry and eats like a <i>glutton</i> . 当他饿的时候,吃起东西来象个老饕。 |
| invalid
[in'velɪd]
1. adj. 无效的
2. adj. , n. 有病的(人)
同 worthless, patient | 1. not valid; without force or effect
2. not well; weak and sick | Unless a check is signed, it is <i>invalid</i> . 支票除非签了名,否则是无效的。
He became <i>invalid</i> as the result of ill health and lack of exercise.
他生病是健康情形不良又缺乏运动的结果。 |
| overtone
[,ou've'toun]
n. 寓意;弦外音
同 implication | things that are suggested but not shown or stated clearly | His words were polite but there was an <i>overtone</i> of anger in his voice.
他客气的话语中实际有愤怒之声。 |
| probe [proub]
v. 探求;细察
同 investigate | search into; examine thoroughly | They <i>probed</i> his past career to judge his qualifications. 他们探求他过去的职业,以评断他的资格。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|--|
| shrine [ʃraɪn]
n. 圣地
回 sanctuary | any sacred place, such as an altar, church, or temple; holy place | There are many sacred <i>shrines</i> in the Near East.
在近东有许多古迹圣地。 |
| statute
[ˈstætjut]
n. 成文法; 法规
回 bill | a law, especially one passed by a lawmaking body; act; measure | The <i>statute</i> increased the taxes we must pay.
法律提高了我们必须付的税。 |
| writhe [raɪð]
v. 绞; 转动
回 wriggle | twist and turn; twist about; squirm | The wounded soldier <i>writhe</i> uncomfortably in pain.
受伤的士兵痛得不舒服地打转。 |

Exercise 5.4 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. He _____ the mud, searching for the ring he dropped.
2. His loud voice includes a(an) _____ of anger.
3. He _____ the account of his experiences to make a better story.
4. The _____ of the United States are made by Congress.
5. You have eaten the whole pie; you are really a(an) _____.

【解答】 1. probed 2. overtone 3. distorted 4. statutes 5. glutton

~~~~~《第五部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|-----------------------|---|
| behold [bi'hould]
v. 看
及物 V. ness
回 observe | look at; see; witness | Watching the first man land on the moon, we <i>beheld</i> a sight never seen before by man.
看那踏上月球的第一人, 我们看到了人类所未见的景象。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|--|
| condescend
(kəndɪ'send)
v. 屈尊；降格
相从
回 deign | come down willingly or graciously to the level of one's inferiors in rank | They should change this bad habit and <i>condescend</i> to be pleased what is pleasing.
他们应该改变这种不好的习惯，而屈身去和正常人一同欢笑。 |
| dike (daik)
n. 1. 堤
回 bank | 1. a bank of earth or a dam built as a defense against flooding | More than 5,000 years ago the Chinese were controlling the Yellow River floods with <i>dikes</i> .
五千多年前，中国人用堤防来控制洪水泛滥。 |
| 2. 沟
回ditch | 2. a narrow passage dug to carry water away. | The farmers dug a deep <i>dike</i> to carry water to the rice field.
农人们挖深沟把水引到稻田。 |
| flip (flip)
v. (以指)弹投
回 toss | toss or move with a snap of the finger | He <i>flipped</i> a coin on the counter to decide whether to go to the theatre or not. 他把硬币掷在柜台上以决定要不要去看电影。 |
| grisly ('grizli)
adj. 可怕的；
狰狞的
回 horrible | causing horror; frightful; ghastly; gruesome | My uncle who had travelled to many countries in the world told a <i>grisly</i> story about people who ate human flesh.
我那遍游世界各地的舅舅说了一个吃人肉的可怕故事。 |
| knavery (neiv)
n. 骗子；诡计多端的人
回 rogue | a tricky or dishonest person; rascal; scoundrel | The <i>knaves</i> who set fire to the barn have been caught and sent to prison. 纵火烧谷仓的骗子被抓起来送到牢里去了。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|---|
| parley (pɔ:lɪ)
n. 谈判;商议
回 negotiation | a talk held between leaders of opposing forces; talk; discussion | The general held a parley with the enemy's leader about exchanging prisoners. 将军和敌军的领袖商议交换俘虏之事。 |
| shred (ʃred)
n. 碎片;细条
回 fragment | a small piece either cut off or torn off; scrap; bit | There is not a shred of evidence that missing money was stolen. 毫无证据说丢了的钱是被偷走的。 |
| surmise
(sə:maɪz)
v. 猜测;猜度
回 guess | from an idea or opinion with few supporting facts; suppose | The judge surmised his guilt; there was no proof that he killed the man. 法官猜度他的罪行;没有证据显示他杀了那个人。 |
| vicissitude
(vi'sisitju:d)
n. 变迁;变化
回 variety | regular change; a change of conditions or circumstances; a turn of fortune | The future is so uncertain that we cannot know all the vicissitudes of our fortunes. 未来是无法可知的,我们无法知道将来命运所有的变化。 |
| warden ('wɔ:dn)
n. 看守人;监护人
回 watchman | a person who looks after a place; a head keeper; warden | The fire warden told us not to light matches near the gas station. 消防队长告诉我们不要在靠近加油站的地方点火柴。 |

Exercise 5.5 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. I _____ open the pages of the magazine to find an interesting article.
2. Her new dress was torn into _____ by herself.
3. The _____ of life may suddenly make a rich man very poor.
4. The future is so uncertain that no one can _____ the course of the rest of his life.
5. Mrs. Smith has no servant but her husband will never _____ to help

her with the housework.

- 【解答】** 1. flipped 2. shreds 3. vicissitudes 4. surmise
5. condescend

成果测验

Exercise 5.6 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词：

- _____ 1. (A) investigate (B) probe (C) testify (D) scan
- _____ 2. (A) scoundrel (B) bulwark (C) rascal (D) rogue
- _____ 3. (A) weigh (B) ponder (C) signify (D) contemplate
- _____ 4. (A) gruesome (B) ghastly (C) grisly (D) groove
- _____ 5. (A) clan (B) fiend (C) party (D) fraternity
- _____ 6. (A) reprove (B) reproach (C) admonish (D) advocate
- _____ 7. (A) derision (B) riddle (C) enigma (D) conundrum
- _____ 8. (A) pedlar (B) sentinel (C) warden (D) warder
- _____ 9. (A) implore (B) fumble (C) beseech (D) entreat
- _____ 10. (A) propensity (B) catastrophe (C) disaster (D) calamity

- 【解答】** 1. C 2. B 3. C 4. D 5. B 6. D 7. A 8. A 9. B 10. A

Exercise 5.7 阅读下面的句子，选出句中斜体词所代表的意义：

- _____ 1. The driver *distorted* the account of the fact to escape blame.

- (A) illustrated (B) reported (C) falsified (D) explained
2. The cat's happy expression bore *testimony* that it had eaten the cream.
 (A) doubt (B) proof (C) experience (D) revelation
3. We shall seek no terms and we shall tolerate no *parley*.
 (A) conference (B) rescue (C) larceny (D) fray
4. She *implored* her mother to give permission for her to go on the trip.
 (A) persuaded (B) suggested (C) beseeched (D) enforced
5. The Red Cross appealed to *philanthropy* to save the life of a prisoner.
 (A) public (B) charity (C) justice (D) attorney
6. The woman was *astounded* to learn that her dearest friend had been spreading bad gossip about her.
 (A) surprised (B) irrigated (C) disappointed (D) cumbered
7. Jack devoted himself to the protection of the *denizens* of the forest.
 (A) visitors (B) customers (C) merchants (D) inhabitants
8. We *surmised* that the traffic delay was caused by some accident on the highway.
 (A) assessed (B) supposed (C) decided (D) confessed
9. She tried to *probe* my mind and discover what I was thinking.
 (A) testify (B) approve (C) investigate (D) flatter
10. That man has been *designated* by the President as the next Secretary of State.
 (A) appointed (B) decided (C) admitted (D) recommended

【解答】 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. B 6. A 7. D 8. B 9. C 10. A

Exercise 5.8 找出一个与斜体词意义最接近的单词：

1. *a vicissitude of life*
 (A) variation (B) condition (C) shortness (D) process
2. *the ale house*
 (A) gold (B) drug (C) beer (D) log
3. *a shred of evidence*
 (A) appearance (B) security (C) division (D) bit
4. *hardy sports*
 (A) difficult (B) robust (C) important (D) dangerous
5. *the game warden*
 (A) manager (B) observe (C) participant (D) watchman

【解答】 1. A 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. D

Exercise 5.9 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词填入空格内：

VOCABULARY LIST

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| carnivorous | designate | duration | admonished |
| distort | implore | daunted | muffled |
| condescended | fend | testimony | bide |

1. The examination questions were rather difficult, but the students were not _____ by them.
2. He may get a good job if he can _____ his time.
3. We hope the war will be of short _____.
4. Now that his father is dead he must _____ for himself.

5. The colonel's wife finally _____ to visit the sergeant's sick wife.
6. Their guide _____ the mountain climbers to follow him carefully.
7. Sheep and cows are not _____ animals, but lions and tigers are.
8. The pupils presented their teacher with a gold watch as _____ of their respect and affection.
9. The sound of the bell was _____ by the curtains behind the door.
10. The committee will _____ him the winner of the contest tomorrow.

【解答】 1. daunted 2. bide 3. duration 4. fend
5. condescended 6. admonished 7. carnivorous
8. testimony 9. muffled 10. designate

LESSON 6

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. Some people gather books *haphazard* and without _____.
 (A)consideration (B)hastiness (C)random
2. She *rued* very bitterly when she _____ her mother.
 (A)lost (B)insulted (C)met
3. Let us be exact in what we say so as to *preclude* any possibility of
 _____.
 (A)failure (B)anomaly (C)misunderstanding
4. The doctor *reproved* the nurse who had been _____ her patient.
 (A)examining (B)neglecting (C)caring
5. It was definite that he was to be a passenger on the boat, though he
 would not be *explicit* about his _____.
 (A)destination (B)ability (C)ticket

△解 答 △

1. A 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. A

《第一部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|---|
| abhor
(ə'bɔ:)
v. 嫌恶;痛恨 | feel very great hatred and dislike for; hate very much; detest; loathe | Most people <i>abhor</i> the criminal of kidnapping the children. 大部分的人憎恶绑架儿童的罪犯。 |
| adore | | |
| boost (bu:st)
v. 1. 由后推;
推上 | 1. push up from below | If you <i>boost</i> me up, I can reach the window easily. 假使你把我往上推,我就能轻易地碰到窗子。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|--|
| n. 2. 为之吹嘘；捧
同lower | 2. an act of promoting or uplifting; encouragement | His friend's willingness to help him was a big <i>boost</i> to the morale. 他朋友自愿帮助他,是士气的一大鼓舞。 |
| detention
[di'tenʃən]
n. 监禁;延迟
同 release | the act of holding back; detainment; delay | The jail is used for <i>detention</i> of persons who have been arrested. 监狱是用来监禁被逮捕的人的。 |
| explicit
[ɪk'splɪsɪt]
adj. 明确的
同 implicit | clearly or fully expressed or stated, leaving nothing to be imagined; definite; precise | He gave such <i>explicit</i> directions that everyone understood them. 他给的指示很明确,每人都了解。 |
| invidious
[ɪn'vɪdɪəs]
adj. 易招怨恨的
同 just | likely to cause ill will or resentment | Wise teachers avoid <i>invidious</i> rules against the students. 聪明的老师避免令学生厌恶的规定。 |
| malign
[mə'lain]
v. 诋毁;诽谤
同 praise | speak ill of; slander | You <i>malign</i> a generous person when you call him a stingy person. 当你说一个慷慨的人吝啬时,你是在诋毁他。 |
| potable
[pəutəbl]
adj. 适于饮用的
同 undrinkable | drinkable; fit for drinking | In places where the water is not <i>potable</i> , they set up purifying systems. 在水无法饮用的地方,人们设立净化系统。 |
| rue [ru:]
v. 后悔;悔恨
同 rejoice | be sorry for; regret; repent | I never went to school, and I've <i>rued</i> it bitterly all my life. 我终身懊悔没上过学。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---------------------------------------|--|
| subsist [səb'sist] v. 存在 | keep alive; live; exist | People in the far north <i>subsist</i> chiefly on fish and meat. 住在北极地方的人主要以鱼和肉为生。 |
| decease | | |
| unruly [ʌn'rulɪ] adj. 难控制的；不守法的 | hard to rule or control; ungovernable | She was such an <i>unruly</i> child that nobody could get along with her. 她是一个不守规矩的孩子，没人能和她相处。 |
| manageable | | |

Exercise 6. 1 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

- He was quite _____ about the matter, leaving no doubt about what he meant.
- The mayor sued the television station because it _____ him by accusing him of dishonest use of city funds.
- If I ask my sister to turn down the radio she makes it even louder; I can't understand why she is so _____.
- He is in _____ in connection with the bribery affair.
- _____ me up the trees and I'll get some apples for you.

【解答】 1. explicit 2. maligned 3. unruly 4. detention 5. Boost

《第二部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|-----------------------|---|--|
| agile [ædʒail] | active; able to move quickly and easily; lively; nimble | The boy had an <i>agile</i> mind, and could come up with excuses as quickly as his mother asked for them. 那男孩有敏捷的头脑，当他母亲要求理由时，他马上就能想到。 |
| adj. 活泼的；敏捷的 | | |
| clumsy | | |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|--|
| caprice (kə'pri:s)
<i>n.</i> 反复无常；
善变
<i>steadfastness</i> | a sudden change
of mind without
reason; whim | His lack of money was the result
of <i>caprice</i> in spending on unnec-
essary things. 他缺钱是他把钱乱
花,买些不需要的东西的结果。 |
| disconsolate
(dis'kən'səlit)
<i>adj.</i> 孤独的；
绝望的
<i>jubilant</i> | hopelessly sad at
the loss of some-
thing without
comfort of hope | She is <i>disconsolate</i> about the
death of her father.
父亲的死令她悲痛欲绝。 |
| fallacy ('fæləsi)
<i>n.</i> 谬见;谬误
<i>truth</i> | a mistaken be-
lief; a false idea;
an error; delu-
sion | It is a popular <i>fallacy</i> to suppose
that riches always bring happi-
ness. 假定财富永远带来幸福是常
有的谬见。 |
| ingenuous
(in'dʒenjuəs)
<i>adj.</i> 坦白的；
老实的
<i>dissembling</i> | frank and open;
candid; straight
forward; naive | She gave <i>ingenuous</i> answers to
all of the stranger's question.
她诚实回答所有陌生人的问题。 |
| mirage ('miraʒ, mi'reɪʒ)
<i>n.</i> 海市蜃楼；
空想
<i>reality</i> | an optical illu-
sion; illusion;
delusion; fantasy | I saw a <i>mirage</i> that made high-
way ahead seem to be flooded
with water.
我看见一个幻影,前头的公路好似
被水淹没一般。 |
| preclude .
(pri'klud)
<i>v.</i> 妨碍;阻止;
使不可能
<i>permit</i> | make impossible;
pr-vent; ex-
clude; hinder | The heavy thunderstorm <i>pre-
cluded</i> our going to the beach.
大雷雨阻止我们去海滨。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|--|
| sheer (ʃiə)
<i>adj.</i> 1. 极薄的 | 1. very thin; almost transparent
2. 垂直的 | <i>Sheer</i> white curtains hung at the little window to let in as much light as possible. 小窗上挂着极薄的白窗帘,尽量使阳光照进来。 |
| opaque | 2. straight up and down; perpendicular | From the top of the wall there was a <i>sheer</i> drop of 100 feet to the water below. 从墙的最上端到下端的水直落100英尺。 |
| succinct
[sək'sɪŋkt]
<i>adj.</i> 简明的;
简洁的 | expressed briefly and clearly; concise; precise | His letter was <i>succinct</i> , with all the major points on one page. 他的信很简洁,所有的重点都在一页上。 |
| verbose | | |

Exercise 6. 2 从第二部分中选出最合适的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The _____ child had never thought of being suspicious of what others told her.
2. Walls and bars _____ the possibility of escape.
3. I could see the garden through the _____ curtains of the window.
4. The cat was _____ because her kitten died.
5. The travellers in the desert saw an oasis in the distance but it was only a(an) _____.

【解答】 1. ingenuous 2. preclude 3. sheer 4. disconsolate
5. mirage

《第三部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| arable
(æ'reəbl)
<i>adj.</i> 适于耕种的
■ <i>sterile</i> | suitable for producing crops; fit for plowing | There is not much arable land on the side of a rocky mountain.
在岩石的山坡上没有多少可耕之地。 |
| complacent
(kəm'pleisnt)
<i>adj.</i> 自满的
■ <i>self-</i>
<i>condemned</i> | self-satisfied; pleased with oneself | The winner's complacent smile annoyed the loser in the football game.
胜利者洋洋自得的微笑使得足球赛的失败者深感厌恶。 |
| dismember
(dis'membə)
<i>v.</i> 1. 肢解
■ <i>consolidate</i> | 1. cut or tear the links from
2. cut to pieces; separate or divide into parts | The wolves dismembered the deer's dead body with their sharp teeth. 野狼用那锐利的牙齿肢解小鹿的死尸。
After the war, the defeated country was dismembered and could no longer be called a nation. 战争后,战败国被瓜分,不再是个国家了。 |
| glee (gli:)
<i>n.</i> 欢乐;高兴
■ <i>agony</i> | a feeling of joyful satisfaction at something which pleases one; mirth; gaiety | She danced with glee when she saw the new toys which her father bought for her birthday present. 当她看到父亲为她买的生日礼物玩具时,高兴得手舞足蹈。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|---|
| implicit
[im'plisit]
<i>adj.</i> 暗含的；含蓄的
☒ <i>explicit</i> | meant, but not clearly expressed or distinctly stated; implied | He gave us <i>implicit</i> consent to take the apples, for he smiled when he saw us do it.
他暗示我们可以拿取那些苹果,因为当他看到我们在拿时,他微微地一笑。 |
| mischiefous
[mis'fives]
<i>adj.</i> 恶作剧的；淘气的
☒ <i>beneficial</i> | naughty; full of mischief; playful; teasing | Someone is spreading <i>mischiefous</i> stories about minister's private life.
有人在散播有关部长私生活的谣言。 |
| redundant
[ri'dʌndənt]
<i>adj.</i> 过多的
☒ <i>necessary</i> | not needed; more than is necessary; superfluous | In the sentence "She lives alone by herself" the word "alone" is <i>redundant</i> .
在句子“她自己独自生活”中，“独自”是多余的词。 |
| solicitude
[sə'lisitju:d]
<i>n.</i> 悬念
☒ <i>indifference</i> | anxious care; anxiety | The <i>solicitude</i> shown to him by his neighbours after the robbery impressed him very deeply.
抢劫之后,他的邻居的焦急之情,给他以深刻的印象。 |
| surplus
['sə:płəs]
<i>n.</i> 过剩;剩余
☒ <i>deficit</i> | an amount over and above what is needed; excess | The bank keeps a large <i>surplus</i> of money in reserve.
银行保存一笔很大的备用金。 |

Exercise 6.3 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The children laughed with _____ at the circus man's humorous action.

2. She broke up her brother's marriage by spreading _____ rumors about his wife.
3. However many matches a team wins, it should never be allowed to get _____.
4. Her silence gave _____ consent when I asked her to go to the dance party tonight.
5. They were thankful for the _____ of the king over the well-being of their subjects.

【解答】 1. glee 2. mischievous 3. complacent 4. implicit
5. solicitude

~~~~~《第四部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|--|
| abate (ə'beit)
v. 减少;减轻 | become less strong; decrease; | The doctor gave him some medicine to <i>abate</i> the pain.
那医生给他一些药以减轻痛苦。 |
| enhance | lessen | |
| consummate
(kən'sʌmit)
v. 成就;完成 | bring to completion; realize; fulfill | His ambition was <i>consummated</i> when he won the prize.
当他获奖时,他的抱负实现了。 |
| baffle | | |
| dwindle
(dwɪndl)
v. 缩减;减少 | become gradually fewer or smaller; shrink; diminish | Our savings have <i>dwindled</i> since my wife was sent to hospital.
自从我太太进医院以后,我们的存款减少了。 |
| increase | | |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| haphazard
(ˈhæpˌhæzəd) | not to be planned; random; by chance
<i>adj.</i> 偶然的；随便的 | It is haphazard timetable; sometimes lessons are held and sometimes they aren't.
这是个不定的课程表；有时有课；有时没课。 |
| deliberate | | |
| obvious [ˈəbviəs] | easy to understand; clear; apparent; conspicuous
<i>adj.</i> 显然的；明白的 | It is obvious that a blind man ought not to drive an automobile. 一个瞎子不应该骑摩托车是很明显的事。 |
| equivocal | | |
| overt [ˈouvə:t] | open or public; not hidden
<i>adj.</i> 公然的；明显的 | I know only his overt reasons for refusing; he may have others.
我只知他拒绝的表面理由；也许还有其他的。 |
| stealthy | | |
| rebuff (ri'bʌf) | a rough or cruel answer when one is trying to be friendly or is asking for help
<i>n.</i> (对请求等)断然拒绝 | We tried to be friendly, but his rebuff made us think he wanted to be left alone.
我们试图友善，但他的拒绝使我们认为他不想被干涉。 |
| admission | | |
| somber ('sombə) | sad and gloomy; have deep shadows
<i>adj.</i> 阴沉的；幽暗的 | He was sad, and his thought about future was very somber .
他很不快乐，他对未来感到前途渺茫。 |
| cheerful | | |
| thwart (θwɔ:t) | oppose and defeat; keep from doing something; frustrate; baffle
<i>v.</i> 反对；妨碍；挫折 | The boy's lack of money thwarted his plans for college.
那男孩缺钱，所以上大学的计划受阻。 |
| encourage | | |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|---|
| vehement
('vɪmənt)
<i>adj.</i> 暴烈的；
猛烈的 | having or showing strong feeling; caused by strong feeling; | I have a vehement hatred of people who are cruel to animals.
我对残害动物的人很反感。 |
| impassive | eager; passionate | |

Exercise 6.4 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. It was a(an) _____ room with dark furniture and heavy black hangings.
2. His happiness was _____ when she agreed to marry him.
3. When he did not drive the car home, it was _____ that he had an accident.
4. Although the rain has _____ somewhat, the wind is still blowing very hard.
5. I was _____ in my camping plans by the cold weather.

【解答】 1. somber 2. consummated 3. obvious 4. abated
5. thwarted

~~~~~《第五部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                               | MEANING                                         | TYPICAL USE                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>benign</b> (bi'nain)<br><i>adj.</i> 亲切的；<br>和蔼的 | having a kind disposition; benevolent; generous | The <b>benign</b> old lady sent us a kind and warm smile.<br>那位和蔼亲切的老婆婆给我们一个亲切而温暖的微笑。 |

| WORD                                                                    | MEANING                                                                                                | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>degrade</b><br>(di'greid)<br><i>v.</i> 降级；降格；免职<br>☒ promote         | reduce to a lower rank, often as a punishment; take away the position or an honor                      | The sergeant was <i>degraded</i> to private for the reason of disobeying order.<br>那中士因不服从命令被降为二等兵。                                                    |
| <b>ephemeral</b><br>(i'femərəl)<br><i>adj.</i> 朝生暮死的；短命的<br>☒ perpetual | lasting for only a very short time; transitory                                                         | My other writings are very <i>ephemeral</i> , but this book will be remembered forever.<br>我其它的作品很短命，但这本书将永远为人记住。                                      |
| <b>illiterate</b><br>(i'litrət)<br><i>adj.</i> 文盲的<br>☒ intelligent     | uneducated; unable to read and write; ignorant                                                         | People who have never gone to school are usually <i>illiterate</i> .<br>没上过学的人通常是目不识丁的。                                                                |
| <b>lavish</b> (lævɪʃ)<br><i>adj.</i> 1. 浪费的<br>☒ stingy                 | 1. very free or too free in giving or spending; prodigal<br>2. give or spend very freely or too freely | Not every rich man is <i>lavish</i> in spending money. 不是每一位富人都滥用金钱。<br>It is a mistake to <i>lavish</i> kindness on ungrateful people. 对忘恩负义的人太好是错误的。 |
| <b>peddle</b> ('pedl)<br><i>v.</i> 沿街叫卖；兜售<br>☒ wholesale               | go from place to place trying to sell small goods                                                      | He is the one who is <i>peddling</i> the drugs unlawfully.<br>他非法兜售药品。                                                                                 |
| <b>reprove</b> (ri'pru:v)<br><i>v.</i> 谴责；责骂<br>☒ compliment            | blame or find fault with in a gentle way; scold                                                        | She <i>reproved</i> the maid in an angry voice for breaking the dish.<br>她生气地责骂女佣，因她打破盘子。                                                              |

| WORD                                                     | MEANING                                         | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>synthetic</b><br>〔sin'θetik〕<br><i>adj.</i> 人工制造的     | artificially made; man-made; artificial         | Many kind of fabrics, furs, and drugs are <i>synthetic</i> products.<br>许多种布、毛和药是人工产物。                               |
| ☒ natural                                                |                                                 |                                                                                                                      |
| <b>unbounded</b><br>〔ʌn'bəundid〕<br><i>adj.</i> 无限制的；无际的 | boundless; without limits; tremendous           | His <i>unbounded</i> courage and compassion made him an excellent leader of the nation.<br>他那无穷的勇气和怜悯心，使他成为国家的优秀领导者。 |
| ☒ limited                                                |                                                 |                                                                                                                      |
| <b>wretched</b><br>〔'retʃid〕<br><i>adj.</i> 可怜的；不幸的      | very unfortunate or unhappy; miserable; pitiful | He was <i>wretched</i> when he failed the entrance examination again.<br>他很不幸，入学考试又没考好。                              |
| ☒ fortunate                                              |                                                 |                                                                                                                      |

*Exercise 6.5* 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ yourself by answering such foolish charges against you.
2. The more important a man's position, the more \_\_\_\_\_ he is in his office job.
3. After the loss of their savings and their home they felt too \_\_\_\_\_ to see their old friends.
4. Giving money to help Red Cross is a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ act.
5. He writes in a very \_\_\_\_\_ way; there are many mistakes on every page.

【解答】 1. degrade 2. lavish 3. wretched 4. benign 5. illiterate

成果測驗

**Exercise 6.6** 由第二栏中选出第一栏各词的反义词:

| COLUMN I        | COLUMN II       |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. disconsolate | (A) clumsy      |
| 2. consummate   | (B) release     |
| 3. malign       | (C) natural     |
| 4. illiterate   | (D) opaque      |
| 5. agile        | (E) jubilant    |
| 6. synthetic    | (F) reality     |
| 7. detention    | (G) intelligent |
| 8. succinct     | (H) praise      |
| 9. sheer        | (I) dissatisfy  |
| 10. mirage      | (J) verbose     |

**【解答】** 1. E 2. I 3. H 4. G 5. A 6. C 7. B 8. J 9. D 10. F

**Exercise 6.7** 选出适当的词填入空格内：

**【答案】** 1. A 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. A 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. B

**Exercise 6.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词：

1. *arable*  
(A)sterile (B)cruel (C)stingy (D)tedious

2. *ephemeral*  
(A)consequent (B)hardy (C)mute (D)perpetual

3. *fallacy*  
(A)success (B)truth (C)achievement (D)exploit

4. abhor

- (A) agree      (B) approve      (C) adore      (D) assess

5. preclude

- (A) exclude      (B) contend      (C) permit      (D) deplore

【解答】

1. A

2. D

3. B

4. C

5. C

**Exercise 6. 9** 从下列生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：

**VOCABULARY LIST**

|          |           |             |          |
|----------|-----------|-------------|----------|
| glee     | ingenuous | abated      | peddled  |
| overt    | redundant | malignant   | wretched |
| implicit | dwindle   | mischiefous | lavish   |

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ boy went through the house hanging all the pictures upside down.
2. My mother didn't believe that Tom troubled me until she saw him in the \_\_\_\_\_ act of his pulling my hair.
3. The child shouted with \_\_\_\_\_ when the birthday cake was cut.
4. What a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ existence these poor people lead in the slums!
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ his innocent friend by calling him a robber.
6. The farmer \_\_\_\_\_ his fruit from house to house.
7. A teacher must give \_\_\_\_\_ praise to the pupils when they answer the questions correctly.
8. The ship waited till the storm \_\_\_\_\_ before sailing out to sea.
9. In "We two both ate an apple each" the word "two" is \_\_\_\_\_.
10. He agreed to give his \_\_\_\_\_ opinion if his name wasn't mentioned in the news story.

**【解答】** 1. mischievous 2. overt 3. glee 4. wretched 5. maligned  
6. peddled 7. lavish 8. abated 9. redundant  
10. ingenuous

本书由台湾学习出版公司  
授权海南(三环)出版社在  
大陆出版,翻印必究。

LESSON 7

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案。



△解 答 △

1. C 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. C

## 《第一部分》

| WORD                                     | MEANING                         | TYPICAL USE                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>blithe</b> (blaiθ)<br><i>adj.</i> 快乐的 | happy and cheerful; gay; joyful | She continued to work in a <i>blithe</i> spirit in spite of all difficulties. |
| <b>miserable</b>                         |                                 | 虽然有许多困难,但她仍继续愉快地工作。                                                           |

| WORD                                                         | MEANING                                                    | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>dejected</b><br>(dɪ'dʒekʃtid)<br><i>adj.</i> 失望的；<br>沮丧的  | in low spirits; sad; discouraged; depressed                | She was feeling <b>dejected</b> and unhappy until the good news cheered her up.<br>她觉得很沮丧和不快乐,直到好消息使她雀跃起来。                   |
| <b>exuberant</b>                                             |                                                            |                                                                                                                              |
| <b>erratic</b> (ɪ'rætɪk)<br><i>adj.</i> 不稳定的；<br>不规律的        | not steady; unconstant; irregular; uncertain               | He is an <b>erratic</b> fellow whose actions are usually completely unpredictable.<br>他是一个没有规矩的家伙,他的行为通常是完全无法预料的。            |
| <b>regular</b>                                               |                                                            |                                                                                                                              |
| <b>immaculate</b><br>(ɪ'mækjulit)<br><i>adj.</i> 洁净的；<br>无暇的 | without a spot or stain; absolutely clean; pure            | When he was a child, his life contained noble ambitions and <b>immaculate</b> thought.<br>当他小的时候,他的生命包含高贵的理想和纯洁的思想。          |
| <b>filthy</b>                                                |                                                            |                                                                                                                              |
| <b>loathe</b> (ləʊθ)<br><i>v.</i> 厌恶;嫌恶                      | hate very much; feel strong dislike and disgust for; abhor | The little girl <b>loathe</b> d to leave her mother for studying abroad.<br>那小女孩不喜欢离开母亲到国外去念书。 <i>loathe to do sth</i>       |
| <b>admire</b>                                                |                                                            |                                                                                                                              |
| <b>pensive</b> ('pensiv)<br><i>adj.</i> 忧愁的；<br>哀思的          | thoughtful in a serious or sad way; meditative; reflective | The woman in this painting has a <b>pensive</b> smile.<br>画中的女人有哀怨的笑容。                                                       |
| <b>airy</b>                                                  |                                                            |                                                                                                                              |
| <b>retard</b> (ri'ta:d)<br><i>v.</i> 阻碍；<br>妨碍               | make slow; cause to happen later; delay                    | I was <b>retarded</b> from keeping an appointment by a business conference that lasted most of the day. 开了几乎一整天的商业会议,使我无法赴约。 |
| <b>accelerate</b>                                            |                                                            |                                                                                                                              |

| WORD                                                 | MEANING                                                 | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>stalwart</b><br>('stɔ:lwt)                        | strongly and stoutly built; sturdy; courageous; valiant | She was proud of her <i>stalwart</i> , good-looking grandson. 她以强壮, 貌美的孙子为荣。                                                             |
| <i>adj.</i> 强壮的<br>强健的                               |                                                         |                                                                                                                                          |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>feeble</b>    |                                                         |                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>shun</b> (ʃʌn)<br><i>v.</i> 规避; 避开                | avoid with determination; keep away from; eschew        | During his illness he <i>shunned</i> all society, and in particular those who had been his dearest friends. 在他生病期间, 他断绝所有的交际, 尤其是最亲爱的朋友。 |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>encounter</b> |                                                         |                                                                                                                                          |

**Exercise 7. 1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Her husband simply \_\_\_\_\_ whatever food she cooked for him without any reason.
2. Cold weather and insufficient rain have \_\_\_\_\_ the growth of the crops.
3. The teacher was \_\_\_\_\_ because one of his students failed to greet him on the street.
4. The cowardly soldier \_\_\_\_\_ hazardous duty by pretending to be sick.
5. He made up his mind to separate from the \_\_\_\_\_ girl who proved to be inconstant in human relations.

**【解答】** 1. loathed 2. retarded 3. dejected 4. shuns 5. erratic

## ~~~~~《第二部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                                          | MEANING                                                                           | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>audible</b> (ə'dəbl)<br>adj. 听得见的<br>反 inaudible           | loud enough to be heard; hearable                                                 | They quarreled with such a loud noise that their voices were <i>audible</i> to the neighbours.<br>他们吵得很大声，邻居都听得到。        |
| <b>auspicious</b> (ə'spiʃəs)<br>adj. 幸运的；兴盛的<br>反 unfavorable | with signs of success; favorable; propitious                                      | The new boy had an <i>auspicious</i> first day in the elementary school.<br>那新上小学的男孩有幸运的第一天。                             |
| <b>elation</b> (i'leɪʃən)<br>n. 得意洋洋<br>反 depression          | high spirits; joy or pride; exultancy; gladness                                   | She was filled with <i>elation</i> at the news that she <u>won the first prize</u> in her class. 她听到她是班上第一名时，感到得意洋洋。     |
| <b>haughty</b> ('hɔ:tɪ)<br>adj. 傲慢的；骄傲的<br>反 modest           | having too much pride; arrogant; too proud of oneself and too scornful of others. | The <i>haughty</i> man thinks highly of himself while holding others in contempt.<br>那傲慢的人自视甚高，轻视别人。                     |
| <b>jeopardy</b> ('dʒepədi)<br>n. 危险；危难<br>反 safety            | danger; risk; peril                                                               | The officer's violation of a regulation is more of a <i>jeopardy</i> than the enlisted man's offense.<br>军官违反命令比士兵犯罪更危险。 |
| <b>mandatory</b> ('mændətəri)<br>adj. 命令的；必须的<br>反 optional   | required by a command or order; compulsory; obligatory                            | It is <i>mandatory</i> to pay a debt within a certain period of time.<br>在一定的期间内还债是必须的。                                  |

| WORD                                                        | MEANING                                                                | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>rebuke</b> [ri'bju:k]<br>v. 指责; 非难<br>☒ praise           | reprove      re-<br>proach; express<br>disapproval of                  | The teacher <b>rebuked</b> the student<br>for throwing the examination pa-<br>per on the floor.<br>老师指责学生把试纸丢在地上。                                 |
| <b>sparse</b> [spa:s]<br>adj. 稀少的;<br>稀疏的<br>☒ dense        | scattered; with<br>few members;<br>scanty; occurring<br>here and there | Not many people came to see the<br>game; the <b>sparse</b> crowd was<br>scattered thinly through the sta-<br>dium. 很少人去看那场比赛; 稀疏<br>的观众零星地散布在看台上。 |
| <b>undue</b> ['ʌn'dju:]<br>adj. 过度的;<br>过分的<br>☒ reasonable | too much; exces-<br>sive; not reason-<br>able                          | A miser gives <b>undue</b> importance<br>to making and saving money.<br>守财奴过度看重赚钱和存钱。                                                             |

**Exercise 7.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

- They threw the dice on the ground; the letter "7" was a (an) \_\_\_\_\_ sign that the victory would be theirs.
- A (An) \_\_\_\_\_ girl is always unpopular among her friends at school.
- She spoke in such a low voice that her quiet remarks were barely \_\_\_\_\_.
- It is a (an) \_\_\_\_\_ regulation that we must keep silent in the school library.
- The man's life was in \_\_\_\_\_ when the tree fell suddenly.

**【解答】** 1. auspicious 2. haughty 3. audible 4. mandatory  
5. jeopardy

## ~~~~~《第三部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                                                 | MEANING                                                               | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>allay</b> [ə'lei]<br>v. 使(恐惧, 愤怒,怀疑)和缓<br>[反] intensify           | make (fear, anger, doubt) less; put at rest; quiet; pacify; alleviate | The doctor's friendly manner helped the patient <i>allay</i> his fear.<br>医生友善的态度能帮助病人缓和恐惧。                                      |
| <b>carnal</b> ['ka:nl]<br>adj. 肉体的;<br>世俗的<br>[反] spiritual          | of the flesh; bodily; sensual                                         | Gluttony and drunkenness have been called <i>carnal</i> vices.<br>贪食和嗜酒被称为肉体上的罪恶。                                                |
| <b>defunct</b><br>[di'fʌŋkt]<br>adj. 死的<br>[反] existent              | no longer in existence; dead; extinct; deceased                       | A family name becomes <i>defunct</i> when the only heir dies without any son. 当唯一的继承人死去了之后没儿子, 那这个姓就要绝迹了。                        |
| <b>feasible</b><br>['fi:zəbl]<br>adj. 可实行的<br>[反] impractical        | that can be done easily; practicable                                  | Of the many plans submitted, the committee selected the plan that seemed most <i>feasible</i> .<br>在许多被提出的计划中, 委员会选出那似乎最切实可行的计划。 |
| <b>ingenuity</b><br>[ɪndʒi'nju(:)iti]<br>n. 智巧; 创造力<br>[反] stupidity | skill in planning or inventing; cleverness                            | The boy showed <i>ingenuity</i> in making toys out of scraps of discarded wood.<br>那男孩在用小片的废弃木头制作玩具上表现了创造力。                      |
| <b>mirth</b> [mə:θ]<br>n. 欢乐; 欢笑<br>[反] grief                        | merriness . . . and gaiety expressed by laughter                      | My joke caused a great deal of <i>mirth</i> among the little children.<br>我的笑话引起小孩子们的笑声。                                         |

| WORD                                                          | MEANING                                                         | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>precarious</b><br>(pri'kærɪəs)<br><i>adj.</i> 危险的；<br>不稳固的 | unsafe; not firm or steady; full of danger; perilous; hazardous | Soldiers on the battlefield lead a <i>precarious</i> life.<br>战场上的士兵过着危险的生活。                                        |
| safe                                                          |                                                                 |                                                                                                                     |
| <b>preordain</b><br>(pri'ɔ:dēn)<br><i>v.</i> 预定；<br>预先注定      | predetermine; fix or decide before the beginning                | Some people believe that fate has <i>preordained</i> whether they will be happy or unhappy.<br>有些人相信命运已注定他们将来是否会幸福。 |
| improvise                                                     |                                                                 |                                                                                                                     |
| <b>taciturn</b><br>(tæsɪtən)<br><i>adj.</i> 沉默寡言的             | saying very little; not fond of talking; uncommunicative;       | At the council broad he was <i>taciturn</i> and never opened his lips.<br>在会议桌上他沉默寡言,从没张开嘴巴。                        |
| loquacious                                                    | silent                                                          |                                                                                                                     |
| <b>venomous</b><br>('venəməs)<br><i>adj.</i> 有毒的；<br>有害的      | poisonous; malicious; vindictive                                | His eldest brother died after the <i>venomous</i> bite from the rattlesnake.<br>他的大哥被响尾蛇咬了一口中毒之后就死了。                |
| benevolent                                                    |                                                                 |                                                                                                                     |

**Exercise 7.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The famous restaurant began to decline after the death of the host and is now \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Your explanation sounds \_\_\_\_\_, but I'm not sure I believe it.
3. His fears were \_\_\_\_ by the news that his family was safe in the storm.
4. His whole face was laughing; his face was full of \_\_\_\_\_.

5. You should be careful to drive on a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ path that winds its way along the mountainside.

**【解答】** 1. defunct 2. feasible 3. allayed 4. mirth 5. precarious

~~~~~《第四部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|---|
| amiss [ə'mis]
<i>adj.</i> 差误; 错误
☒ proper | improper; wrong; out of order | The doctor said there was nothing <i>amiss</i> with her.
医生说她没什么病。 |
| comprise
[kəm'praiz]
<i>v.</i> 构成; 包含
☒ omit | be made up of; consist of; include | This anthology <i>comprises</i> samples from the work of ten authors. 这本文选包含了十个作家的作品范例。 |
| dissemble
(di'sembl)
<i>v.</i> 隐藏; 掩饰
☒ disclose | conceal one's real feelings, or thought; disguise; dissimulate | Families that quarrel in the privacy of the home do well to <i>dissemble</i> when they go out to dinner. 在家中争吵的家庭出外晚餐时都掩饰得很好。 |
| glib (glib)
<i>adj.</i> 油腔滑调的
☒ terse | speaking easily and smoothly; voluble; fluent; garrulous | A <i>glib</i> door-to-door salesman sold her a set of books that she did not want.
一位挨户访问言词伶俐的售货员卖给她一套她本来不要的书。 |
| invincible
(in'vensebl)
<i>adj.</i> 难以克服的
☒ conquerable | too strong to be conquered; indomitable; insuperable | Before World War II, the French thought their Maginot Line as an <i>invincible</i> bulwark against German invasion. 第二次世界大战前, 法国人把马奇诺防线视为对抗德国入侵的坚强堡垒。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|--|
| perfunctory
(pə'fʌŋktɔri)
<i>adj.</i> 草率的
☒ meticulous | done hastily and without thought, interest, or care; mechanical; indifferent | The lazy little boy gave his face a perfunctory washing.
那懒惰的小男生草草地把脸洗了一下。 |
| replete
(ri'pli:t)
<i>adj.</i> 充满的
☒ vacuous | abundantly supplied; filled; full; abounding | The Disneyland tour was replete with unexpected thrills and suspense. 狄斯尼乐园充满了意想不到的刺激和悬念。 |
| solicit (sə'lisit)
v. 恳求; 请求
☒ respond | ask earnestly; try to get; beg; request | We respectfully solicit your continuous friendship and patronage, 我们礼貌地请求你长久的友谊和鼓励。 |
| thraldom
(θrɔ:lðəm)
<i>n.</i> 奴役
☒ liberty | bondage; slavery | The nation will soon be liberated from the foulest thraldom .
那国家很快将从那最邪恶、污秽的奴役中被解放出来。 |
| wilt (wilt)
v. 枯萎;凋谢
☒ thrive | cause to become less fresh and start to die; wither | Give the flowers some water regularly, or they will wilt .
按时给花浇水,否则它们会枯萎、凋谢。 |

Exercise 7.4 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Columbus had a (an) _____ belief that he would reach land by sailing west.
2. The United Kingdom _____ England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland.
3. The hungry beggar felt _____ with food and drink, then sleepy.

4. The teacher _____ the earnest attention of his students to see the map on the blackboard.

5. From his angry looks, I knew something had gone _____ while I was away.

【解答】 1. invincible 2. comprises 3. replete 4. solicited 5. amiss

~~~~~《第五部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                                                        | MEANING                                                           | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>abominable</b><br>[ə'bɔmɪnebl]<br><i>adj.</i> 可厌的；<br>可恶的<br>☒ admirable | causing great dislike; hateful; detestable; disgusting; abhorrent | That <i>abominable</i> place was so dirty and evil smelling that he turned away in disgust.<br>这个可憎的地方是如此的脏和不好闻,他作呕地走开。                                               |
| <b>brainy</b> ('breini)<br><i>adj.</i> 聪明的；<br>精明的<br>☒ silly               | intelligent; clever                                               | <i>Brainy</i> students could understand easily what the teacher explained to them. 聪明的学生很容易就理解老师的解释。                                                                  |
| <b>deteriorate</b><br>[di'tiəriəreit]<br><i>v.</i> 使变坏<br>☒ ameliorate      | become worse; lesson in character                                 | As the morning progressed, the weather <i>deteriorated</i> more and more.<br>随着早晨的过去,天气愈来愈坏。                                                                          |
| <b>exquisite</b><br>[eks'kwizit]<br><i>adj.</i> 精美的<br>☒ common             | very lovely; very finely made or done; delicate                   | In German he was an <i>exquisite</i> stylist, and he brought to that language a new sensitivity in the art of story-telling.<br>在德文方面,他是个精细的文学批评家,他用讲故事的技巧带给德文一种新的感受。 |

| WORD                                                                               | MEANING                                                                                                                    | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>incurable</b><br>[ɪn'kjʊərəbl]<br><i>adj.</i> 无可救药的<br>反 remediable             | cannot be cured or remedied                                                                                                | Cancer is no longer an <i>incurable</i> disease nowadays; it can be remedied by using radioactivity. 现今，癌症不再是不治之病；它可用放射线治疗。                                                                                          |
| <b>manual</b><br>[ˈmænjuəl]<br><i>adj.</i> 1. 手制的<br>反 spiritual<br><br>n. 2. 使用手册 | 1. of or using the hands; done with hands<br><br>2. a book that helps its readers to understand or use something; handbook | <i>Manual</i> workers often earn more than office workers.<br>劳力工人通常比坐办公桌的人赚得多。<br><br>This workbook has a teacher's <i>manual</i> in which examination problems and their answers are included. 这本工作簿有教师手册，内有试题和解答。 |
| <b>potential</b><br>[pə'tenʃəl]<br><i>adj.</i> 可能的；潜在的<br>反 exposed                | existing in possibility; latent; covert                                                                                    | He is a <i>potential</i> leader to control this large state.<br>他是个有潜力的领导者，能管理这个国家。                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>ruthless</b><br>['ru:θlɪs]<br><i>adj.</i> 无情的；残忍的<br>反 lenient                  | having no pity; showing no mercy; cruel; merciless; relentless                                                             | They are such <i>ruthless</i> parents that they never give presents to the children on Christmas Day.<br>他们是如此无情的父母亲，从没给孩子圣诞礼物。                                                                                      |
| <b>voluble</b><br>['vɒljUBL]<br><i>adj.</i> 口若悬河的<br>反 taciturn                    | ready to talk much; having the habit of talking much; talkative                                                            | Her explanations for failure to do the work were <i>voluble</i> but not easily believed. 她对工作失败的解释口若悬河，但不易为人相信。                                                                                                      |

| WORD                                                      | MEANING                             | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>vociferous</b><br>[vou'sifərəs]<br><i>adj.</i> 嘈杂的；喧哗的 | shouting; loud and noisy; clamoring | Theatre lobbies were filled with a <b>vociferous</b> crowd during the intermission.<br>中场休息时间，电影院的走廊上挤满了喧闹的人群。 |
| tranquil                                                  |                                     |                                                                                                                |

**Exercise 7.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ white fur coat that the lady has on is very expensive.
2. There is a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ danger of being bitten when one plays with a strange dog.
3. What a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ thing this is to treat the little boy so relentlessly!
4. Mother tried to control the unruly screaming and shouting of her \_\_\_\_\_ child.
5. A machine \_\_\_\_\_ rapidly in its function if it is not taken care of by its users.

【解答】 1. exquisite 2. potential 3. ruthless 4. vociferous  
5. deteriorates

### 成果测验

**Exercise 7.6** 由第二栏中选出第一栏各词的反义词：

| COLUMN I           | COLUMN II     |
|--------------------|---------------|
| _____ 1. modest    | (A) taciturn  |
| _____ 2. elation   | (B) filthy    |
| _____ 3. voluble   | (C) jeopardy  |
| _____ 4. miserable | (D) preordain |

- |       |               |                |
|-------|---------------|----------------|
| _____ | 5. ingenuity  | (E) depression |
| _____ | 6. stalwart   | (F) stupidity  |
| _____ | 7. undue      | (G) blithe     |
| _____ | 8. improvise  | (H) reasonable |
| _____ | 9. immaculate | (I) haughty    |
| _____ | 10. safety    | (J) feeble     |

**【解答】** 1. I 2. E 3. A 4. G 5. F 6. J 7. H 8. D 9. B 10. C

**Exercise 7.7** 选出适当的词填入空格中:

**【解答】** 1.A 2.A 3.A 4.A 5.A 6.A 7.B 8.A 9.B 10.B

*Exercise 7.8* 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的词。

1. *retard* the progress of  
(A) detain      (B) hinder      (C) abandon      (D) accelerate

2. *sparse* hair  
(A) soft      (B) straight      (C) dense      (D) curved

3. *invincible* courage  
(A) visible      (B) cowardly      (C) limited      (D) conquerable

4. *mandatory* order  
(A) equivocal      (B) optional      (C) compulsory      (D) inconsistent

5. *glib* answer  
(A) uncertain      (B) loquacious      (C) taciturn      (D) sincere

備註 1.D 2.C 3.D 4.B 5.C

**Exercise 7.9** 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：

## VOCABULARY LIST

|                   |                  |                   |                |
|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>jeopardies</b> | <b>replete</b>   | <b>invincible</b> | <b>pensive</b> |
| <b>comprises</b>  | <b>potential</b> | <b>vulnerable</b> | <b>amiss</b>   |
| <b>precarious</b> | <b>ruthless</b>  | <b>retarded</b>   | <b>shun</b>    |

1. A virtuous man will \_\_\_\_\_ evil companions and practices.
2. His course of graduate study \_\_\_\_\_ English, mathematics, and management.
3. She was in a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ mood, and sat down alone staring out the window.
4. The good and the evil are \_\_\_\_\_ characters within each person.
5. Something must be \_\_\_\_\_ with a boy if he doesn't eat anything for days.
6. Ted is a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ speaker at meetings; he doesn't give much chance to others to say anything.
7. The earliest pioneers in the West confronted a great many \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The climber had only a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ hold on the slipping rock.
9. The new apartment house is \_\_\_\_\_ with every modern furniture.
10. Economic progress in Latin America has been consistently \_\_\_\_\_ by a high birth rate.

【解答】 1. shun 2. comprises 3. pensive 4. potential 5. amiss  
6. voluble 7. jeopardies 8. precarious 9. replete 10. retarded

## LESSON 8

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. The stranger's *derogatory* remarks about the town and its people made him \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) stupid      (B) unpopular      (C) honest
2. The motorist was *acquitted* of \_\_\_\_\_; he was thereupon absolved from any claim for damages.  
 (A) reckless driving (B) witness      (C) suffering from the wound
3. One's childhood life seems happier in *retrospect* than in \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) fancy      (B) reality      (C) adulthood life
4. A man may utter an *insolent* remark; he may be \_\_\_\_\_ of his associates.  
 (A) cautious      (B) considerate      (C) contemptuous
5. The *acme* of the development of space ships probably lies in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) future      (B) fortitude      (C) sagacity

▲解 答 ▲  
 1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. A

~~~~~《第一部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|---|
| bleak [bli:k]
adj. 寒冷的；
荒凉的 | cold and cheerless;
without shelter from cold | The weather in early December
was bleak and unpleasant. 十二月
初的天气是寒冷且令人不快的。 |
| cheerful | winds | |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|--|
| castigate
[kæstɪgeɪt]
v. 惩治；苛评；谴责
☒ applaud | punish or scold severely in order to correct; rebuke; criticize | The electric inspector was <i>castigated</i> for having failed to check the wire as he was supposed to. 电工因没有把他份内的电线检查好而被谴责。 |
| enmity [en'miti]
n. 敌意；不和
☒ sympathy | the state of feeling of being an enemy; hatred; hostility; animosity | We should overcome the worst that the tyrant's <i>enmity</i> can do. 我们应该克服那暴君的仇恨所能到的最坏程度。 |
| impartial
[ɪm'pa:ʃəl]
adj. 公平的
☒ prejudiced | giving equal attention to all concerned; fair; not partial | In any case, parents should be <i>impartial</i> to their every child. 无论如何,父母亲应对他们的每个孩子不偏不倚。 |
| lucid [lju:sid]
adj. 1. 明白的；清晰的
2. 神志清明的
☒ obscure | 1. easy to follow or understand; plan
2. clear in intellect; sane; rational | The teacher asked me to give a <i>lucid</i> explanation of my being late for class. 老师要求我对上课迟到给出清晰的解释。
The old man is confused most of the time but he does have <i>lucid</i> moments. 那老人大部分的时间头脑不清醒,但也有神志清明的时候。 |
| perpendicular
[pə:pən'dikjulə]
adj. 垂直的
☒ horizontal | exactly upright; vertical; erect | A square has four 90-degree angles made by its four <i>perpendicular</i> sides. 正方形的四个直角是由它四条垂直的边所作成的。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|--|
| retrospect
〔retro'spekt〕
n. 反顾；回顾
反 prospect | the act of looking back towards the past; thinking about the past | In <i>retrospect</i> , many good opportunities were neglected in my life. 回想起来,我一生中坐失了很多好的机会。 |
| sagacity
〔sə'gæsiti〕
n. 睿智；灵敏
反 folly | good judgement and understanding; wisdom; mental acute-ness; shrewdness | The politician showed a good <i>sagacity</i> in avoiding the mistakes he'd made in the previous campaign. 那位政治家精明地避免了发生和前次选举同样的错误。 |
| urbane 〔ə'bēn〕
adj. 温文的；
文雅的
反 vulgar | having very good manners; refined; courteous | <i>Urbane</i> speech is educated speech, as distinguished from the speech of the ignorant. 温文的言语是受过教育的言辞,和无知者的言论有所区别。 |

Exercise 8.1 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The _____ between Arabs and Israelis threatened to break into open war at any time.
2. The tree was leaning against the house and no longer _____.
3. A neutral observer, not a participant, asked for a(an) _____ account of how the fight started.
4. Lonely and ill, the old woman having no children faced a(an) _____ future.
5. Impartiality as well as _____ is required to be a good judge.

【解答】 1. enmity 2. perpendicular 3. impartial 4. bleak

5. sagacity

horizontal

《第二部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|---|
| ardent [ə:dənt]
adj. 极热心的；热情的
回 impassive | full of zeal; very enthusiastic; eager | After reading about the lives of several great Americans, John became an <i>ardent</i> student of American history. 读了有关几个美国伟人的生平事迹之后, 约翰成为一个对美国历史很热心的学生。 |
| derogatory
[di'rɔ:gətəri]
adj. 损毁的；诽谤的
回 enhancive | showing or causing lack of respect; disparaging; belittling | I can't bear his <i>derogatory</i> remarks about my brother's character. 我无法忍受他对我弟弟个性的诽谤之言。 |
| discretion
[dis'kriʃən]
n. 1. 谨慎；明辨
2. 自由选择或决定
回 recklessness | 1. the quality of being discreet; good judgment
2. freedom to judge or choice | I won't tell you what time to leave; you're old enough to use your own <i>discretion</i> . 我不告诉你什么时候离开; 你已到了用自己的判断力的年龄了。
The house of the meetings will be fixed at the chairman's <i>discretion</i> . 会议厅将以主席的选择而定。 |
| hilarious
[hɪlə'reitʃ]
adj. 高兴的；热闹的
回 depressed
[hɪlə'reitʃ]
n. hilarity | full of laughter; very merry; noisily gay; mirthful | The party got quite <i>hilarious</i> after they brought more wine. 他们带来更多的酒之后, 派对变得相当热闹。 |

喜欢、高兴

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|--|
| paramount
[ˈpærəmaʊnt]
adj. 最重要的；
至上的
☒ mediocre | supreme; pre-dominant; chief in importance | It is a paramount responsibility of every officer to take care of his men before caring for himself. 每一军官的最高职责是在照顾自己之前先照料好他的弟兄。 |
| recede [ri(;)sɪd] v. 后退
☒ approach | move back or away; retreat; retire | Houses and trees seem to recede as we ride past in a train. 当我们乘火车经过时，房屋和树木似乎向后退。 |
| rife [raɪf]
adj. 充斥的
☒ scanty | widespread; common; numerous; prevalent | The whole city was rife with rumors of political corruption and bribery. 全城充斥着政治腐败和贿赂的谣言。 |
| spontaneous
[spɒn'teɪnɪəs]
adj. 自然的；
自发的
☒ compulsive | caused by natural impulse or desire; of one's own choice; voluntary | Both sides burst into spontaneous cheers at the magician's skillful tricks. 两方对魔术师熟练的技艺不自主地发出赞叹声。 |
| tenuous [ˈtenjuəs]
adj. 细的；薄的
☒ thick | very thin or slender; not dense; rare | The air ten miles above the earth is very tenuous . 地面上十英里处的气体是非常稀薄的。 |

Exercise 8.2 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. You must show more _____ in choosing your friends.
2. We consider lack of morale as the _____ cause for our defeat.
3. We thought his mistake was the most _____ joke we'd ever heard.
4. A pile of oily rags will sometimes break into a(an) _____ flame.
5. Superstition is still _____ in some underdeveloped countries.

【解答】 1. discretion 2. paramount 3. hilarious 4. spontaneous
5. rife

《第三部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|--|
| acme [ækmi]
n. 顶点; 极点
☒ bottom | the highest point; culmination; climax | A baseball player usually reaches the <i>acme</i> of his skill before he is thirty. 一个棒球员通常在他三十岁之前, 到达球技高峰。 |
| candor [kændər]
n. 坦白; 诚意
☒ feint | fairness; impartiality; frankness and sincerity | He spared no one's feelings and expressed his views with great <i>candor</i> . 他在不伤害他人的感情下, 把自己的意见表示得很坦白。 |
| dissuade
[di'sweid]
v. 劝阻
☒ persuade | persuade not to do something | The father finally <i>dissuaded</i> his son from leaving school. 那父亲终于说动了他的儿子不辍学。 |
| gratuitous
[grə'tju(:)itəs]
adj. 不需要的
☒ warranted | not deserved or necessary; uncalled-for | Her advice was quite <i>gratuitous</i> ; I can think for myself. 她的忠告相当不需要; 我会为自己着想。 |
| impeach [im'pi:tʃ]
v. 检举; 弹劾
☒ exonerate | accuse of wrong conduct | The House of Representatives has the sole power to <i>impeach</i> an officer of the United States Government. 美国众议院有特权弹劾美国政府的官员。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| ostensible
[əʊstensəbl]
adj. 表面的；
假装的
反 substantial | according to appearance; apparent | Her <i>ostensible</i> purpose was to borrow some sugar, but she really wanted to see her neighbor's new furniture. 她表面上的目的是来借糖，但她真正的目的是来看看她邻居的新家具。 |
| paltry [ˈpɔ:ltri]
adj. 无价值的；
微不足道的
反 significant | worthless; unimportant; worthlessly small; trivial | The poor painter sold his paintings for a <i>paltry</i> sum of money. 那位穷画家以微不足道的数目卖了他的画。 |
| sordid [ˈsɔ:did]
adj. 污秽的；
不洁的
反 clean | dirty; filthy | The poor family lived in a <i>sordid</i> log cabin in the valley. 这个穷人家住在山谷中一污秽的小木屋内。 |
| tidy [taidi]
adj. 整洁的；
整齐的
反 chaotic | neatly arranged; orderly | She makes it a rule to keep her room neat and <i>tidy</i> after coming back from school. 放学后，她习惯保持房间的整齐和清洁。 |

Exercise 8.3 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

- When he became prime minister, he reached the _____ of his hopes.
- The father _____ the boy from being a doctor, but persuaded him to be a politician.
- The team felt cheated and challenged the umpire to prove his _____.
- Were it not for your _____ interference, the children would have quickly settled their dispute.
- My daughter is very _____ and never goes out without combing her hair.

【解答】 1. acme 2. dissuaded 3. candor 4. gratuitous 5. tidy

《第四部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| aloof [ə'luf] adv. 远离; 躲开 | at a distance but within view; | One tall boy stood <i>aloof</i> from all the small children. 一个高的男孩站得远远地, 离开所有矮的孩子。 |
| ☒ nearly | apart | |
| cardinal [ˈka:dinl] | of highest importance; chief; principal | Regular meals and exercise are of <i>cardinal</i> importance to our health. 规律的饮食和运动对我们的健康是最首要的。 |
| adj. 首要的;
主要的 | | |
| ☒ insignificant | | |
| drab [dræb] | 1. lacking brightness or color
adj. 1. 暗黄灰色;
土褐色 | There are many <i>drab</i> houses in the smoky mining town. 冒烟的矿内有许多土褐色的房子。 |
| | 2. 单调的;
枯涩的 | The life of a person who never does anything is dull and <i>drab</i> . 一个从未做过任何事的人的生活是索然无味的。 |
| ☒ bright | 2. not attractive; uninteresting;
dull | |
| feud [fju:d] | a long and deadly quarrel | The two families had been at <i>feud</i> with each other for three generations. 这两家已有三代的冤仇了。 |
| n. 家族的累世
宿仇 | | |
| ☒ intimacy | | |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|---|
| insolent
〔ɪn'selənt〕
adj. 粗野的；
无礼的
☒ humble | boldly rude; intentionally disregarding the feelings of others; insulting; impudent | His <i>insolent</i> speech and behavior upset everyone in the room. 他粗野的言论和行为使房间内的每个人烦恼。 |
| mitigate
〔'mitigeit〕
v. 使缓和；
使减轻
☒ aggravate | make less in force or degree; make less severe; temper; | The judge said that nothing could <i>mitigate</i> the cruelty with which the man had treated the child. 法官说没有任何事能减轻那人对小孩的残暴行为。 |
| pertinent
〔'pə:tɪnənt〕
adj. 中肯切题的
☒ irrelevant | connected directly; to the point; relevant | A summary of the events leading up to this situation would be <i>pertinent</i> information. 把造成这情况的先前事件作一简略说明, 才是适当的资料。 |
| predecessor
〔'pri:dɪsəsə〕
n. 某职位的前任
☒ successor | a person holding a position or office before another. | His <i>predecessor</i> quit because he was not in the least interested in this kind of job. 他的前任因对这种工作一点也没兴趣, 所以离职了。 |
| tardy 〔'ta:di〕
adj. 延迟的
☒ prompt | slow in acting or happening; delaying; dilatory | Let me apologize for my being <i>tardy</i> in answering your letter. 让我为我的迟迟回信道歉。 |
| whet 〔hwet〕
v. 刺激
☒ quell | make some one wish for more; stimulate | You'd think she would never climb again, after falling down the mountain, but it just <i>whetted</i> her appetite. 你也许会想她从山上摔下来后不会再爬山, 但那正好磨出了她的胃口。 |

Exercise 8.4 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. They did not speak when they met, for they were at deadly _____ with each other last week.
2. The teacher scolded the boy several times for being _____ for school.
3. Aspirin _____ the pain of his headache in about half an hour.
4. She held herself _____ from society, preferring to spend her days and nights dwelling on her memories.
5. Rumors of secret information on the actress' suicide _____ the curiosity of the public.

【解答】 1. feud 2. tardy 3. mitigated 4. aloof 5. whetted

~~~~~《第五部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                                         | MEANING                                                   | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>acquit</b> [ə'kwɪt]<br>v. 宣告无罪<br>回 <b>inculpate</b>      | say that a person is not guilty of wrong doing            | The man accused of stealing the money was <b>acquitted</b> for lack of witnesses. 那人因偷钱被起诉,但因缺乏目击者被宣告无罪。        |
| <b>brittle</b> [ˈbrɪtl]<br>adj. 脆的;易碎的<br>回 <b>hard</b>      | easily broken; fragile; frail                             | Be careful not to break the box of glass; that thin glass is hard but <b>brittle</b> . 小心不要打破那玻璃盒;那薄的玻璃虽坚硬,但易碎。 |
| <b>detract</b> [dɪ'trækt]<br>v. 去掉;减损<br>回 <b>exaggerate</b> | remove some of the quality of worth; depreciate; derogate | The ugly frame <b>detracts</b> from the beauty of the famous picture. 难看的框子减损这幅名画的美丽。                           |

| WORD                                                                   | MEANING                                                                                      | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>extirpate</b><br>[ek'stə:pēit]<br>v. 根除<br>☒ establish              | pull up by the roots; destroy completely; eradicate; annihilate                              | To <i>extirpate</i> weeds is not only to destroy their visible parts but to pull them out by the roots. 除草不只是破坏其可见部份,而是连根拔起。                                                  |
| <b>indulgent</b><br>[in'duldʒənt]<br>adj. 1. 放任的<br>2. 宽容的<br>☒ stern  | 1. too kind or agreeable; giving in to another's wishes or whims<br>2. not critical; lenient | The <i>indulgent</i> mother bought her children everything they wanted. 这个溺爱的母亲买给孩子任何他们要的东西。<br>The <i>indulgent</i> teacher praised every poem we wrote. 这位宽容的老师称赞我们所作的每一首诗。 |
| <b>mendacious</b><br>[men'deifəs]<br>adj. 好说谎的;<br>不诚实的<br>☒ candid    | lying; untruthful; dishonest                                                                 | The <i>mendacious</i> beggar told a different tale of woe at every house. 那个好说谎的乞丐在每家说不同的悲哀故事。                                                                                |
| <b>plausible</b><br>[plɔ:zəbl]<br>adj. 似乎合理的;<br>似乎公平的<br>☒ incredible | appearing true; reasonable or fair                                                           | For my own sake, I've told a <i>plausible</i> lie at the club meeting, but the members did not believe me at all. 为我自己的缘故,我在俱乐部的会议上说了一个似乎合理的谎言,但那儿的人一点也不相信我。                  |
| <b>sanction</b><br>['sæŋkjən]<br>adj. 批准;认可<br>☒ rejection             | permission with authority; support; approval                                                 | We have the <i>sanction</i> of the recreation department to play ball in this park. 康乐部门允许我们在这公园里面玩球。                                                                         |

| WORD                                               | MEANING                                                                  | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>shallow</b> [ʃæləʊ]<br>adj. 浅的                  | not deep; lacking deep or serious thinking; superficial                  | Youngsters usually rush into marriage with only the <i>shallow</i> notions of what love and responsibility mean. 年青人通常对爱和责任只有一些肤浅的观念,就匆匆地结婚。 |
| <b>verge</b> [vɜːdʒ]<br>n. 边;缘<br>[vɜːdʒ] interior | the edge or border; brim; the point at which something begins or happens | We parked the car on the grass <i>verge</i> at the side of the highway.<br>我们把车停在高速公路的草坪上。                                                   |

**Exercise 8.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The scandal published in newspaper \_\_\_\_\_ much from the mayor's reputation.
2. A (An) \_\_\_\_\_ explanation is the one that appears to be believable on the surface.
3. It is illegal to translate a book without the \_\_\_\_\_ of the author and the publisher.
4. She tried to hide her grief, but she was on the \_\_\_\_\_ of tears.
5. We look forward to the day when disease and poverty will be \_\_\_\_\_.

【解答】 1. detracted 2. plausible 3. sanction 4. verge 5. extirpated

### 成果测验

**Exercise 8.6** 由第二栏中选出第一栏各词的反义词:

#### COLOUM I

#### COLOUM II

1. gratuitous

(A) depressed

- |                     |                 |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| _____ 2. ardent     | (B) significant |
| _____ 3. paramount  | (C) inculpate   |
| _____ 4. mendacious | (D) obscure     |
| _____ 5. enmity     | (E) warranted   |
| _____ 6. paltry     | (F) impassive   |
| _____ 7. hilarious  | (G) substantial |
| _____ 8. acquit     | (H) mediocre    |
| _____ 9. ostensible | (I) candid      |
| _____ 10. lucid     | (J) sympathy    |

**【解答】** 1. E 2. F 3. H 4. I 5. J 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. G 10. D

**Exercise 8.7** 选出适当的词填入空格中：

1. The manager considered it \_\_\_\_\_ to his position to accept the demands of the trade union leaders.  
 (A) derivative      (B) derogatory
2. My mother tried to \_\_\_\_\_ me from going to see the movie, for I had not finished my homework.  
 (A) dissuade      (B) persuade
3. Discrimination and persecution have created an atmosphere of \_\_\_\_\_ between Negro and White.  
 (A) amity      (B) enmity
4. The appetizer was delicious and \_\_\_\_\_ the hungry and tired man's palate.  
 (A) whetted      (B) whipped
5. The spider hung from a \_\_\_\_\_ silky thread at the corner of the room.  
 (A) tenuous      (B) tentative

6. People who are \_\_\_\_\_ in paying their bills are poor customers.  
 (A) tedious                   (B) tardy
7. After the severe storm the flag pole was no longer \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) impartial               (B) perpendicular
8. The rocky peaks of high mountains are always \_\_\_\_\_ and windy.  
 (A) bleach                   (B) bleak
9. The judge decided to \_\_\_\_\_ the man's sentence in the light of his previous record.  
 (A) malign                   (B) mitigate
10. The plan for the new building will be practised after all necessary \_\_\_\_\_ are obtained.  
 (A) sanctities              (B) sanctions

【解答】 1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. A 6. B 7. B 8. B 9. B 10. B

**Exercise 8.8** 找出一个与斜体词 意义相反的单词：

1. *urbane*  
 (A) rural   (B) vulgar   (C) modern   (D) neglect
2. *castigate*  
 (A) agree   (B) preserve   (C) obey   (D) applaud
3. *shallow*  
 (A) profound   (B) relevant   (C) indifferent   (D) humble
4. *retrospect*  
 (A) antipathy   (B) prospect   (C) reality   (D) improvement
5. *impeach*  
 (A) castigate   (B) bestow   (C) exonerate   (D) recede

【解答】 1. B   2. D   3. A   4. B   5. C

**Exercise 8.9** 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：

**VOCABULARY LIST**

|        |              |           |            |
|--------|--------------|-----------|------------|
| whet   | predecessors | indulgent | discretion |
| tardy  | cardinal     | castigate | impartial  |
| recede | spontaneous  | tidy      | acme       |

1. A judge cannot remain \_\_\_\_\_ without being free of all political pressure.
2. They're very \_\_\_\_\_ parents; they give their children presents all the time.
3. He is always \_\_\_\_\_ in paying back the borrowed money.
4. The laughter at his joke is never forced but always \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ idea of the Labor Party's political thought is that all people should be equal.
6. It requires \_\_\_\_\_ to criticize someone without hurting his feelings.
7. This is the 5th plan we have made but it's no better than its \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I watched the coast of Korea slowly \_\_\_\_\_ into the distance.
9. Schubert reached the \_\_\_\_\_ of his skill while he was quite young.
10. Their living room was so \_\_\_\_\_ that it seemed doubtful that anyone actually lived in it.

【解答】 1. impartial 2. indulgent 3. tardy 4. spontaneous  
 5. cardinal 6. discretion 7. predecessors 8. recede  
 9. acme 10. tidy

## LESSON 9

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. Mr. Kim was a counsel for the *plaintiff*, and Mr. Park for the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A)lawyer                   (B)defendant           (C)jury
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ entered the harbor and began to *plunder* the town.  
 (A)policemen              (B)pirates               (C)sailors
3. He is very *scrupulous* about the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A)choice of his words   (B>manual labor      (C)water pollution
4. Their \_\_\_\_\_ were drawn *aslant* over their brows, and they were chewing gums leaning against the wall.  
 (A)legs                     (B)gloves               (C)caps
5. The crowd at the scene of the accident *impeded* the arrival of the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A)jeopardy               (B)ambulance           (C)relish

△解 答 △

1. B 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. B

~~~~~《第一部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| adjacent
[ə'dʒeisənt]
<i>adj.</i> 接近的； | near or close; neighboring;
next; bordering | No one in the <i>adjacent</i> apartments was awakened by their quarreling sounds.
他们的吵架声没有吵醒邻近公寓的人。 |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> distant | | |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| calamity
(kə'læməti)
<i>n.</i> 不幸之事；灾难
回 bliss | a great misfortune; disaster; misfortune; misery | The spring floods were a great calamity to the farmers whose crops and houses were ruined.
春天的洪水对农人来说是一大灾难,他们的农作物和房子都被破坏了。 |
| devastate
('devəsteɪt)
<i>v.</i> 毁灭;破坏
回 fertilize | make waste; make unfit to live in; desolate; destroy | The floods and storms which have no precedent in the recorded history devastated the country.
历史上前所未有的洪水和台风,摧毁了这个国家。 |
| exultant
(ig'zʌltənt)
<i>adj.</i> 狂欢的;大喜的
回 mournful | rejoicing greatly; triumphant | The exultant players were dancing on the ground over their team's victory.
欣喜若狂的球员为他们的胜利,在球场上跳着舞。 |
| inexhaustible
(,inig'zo:stəbl)
<i>adj.</i> 无穷尽的
回 limited | cannot be exhausted; very abundant | The wealth of our country seems inexhaustible to many people abroad. 对许多海外人士而言,我们国家的财富似乎是无穷尽的。 |
| maudlin
('məʊdlɪn)
<i>adj.</i> 易落泪的
回 unmoved | sentimental in a weak and silly way | We saw a maudlin movie about an orphan who lost his parents in the war. 我们看了部令人落泪的电影,内容是有关一个在战争中失去父母的孤儿。 |
| plunder
(pləndə) | rob; take by force; steal | The enemies plundered all the valuable things they could find in the village. 敌人把在村中能够发现的所有贵重物品都抢走。 |
| <i>v.</i> 抢夺
回 donate | | |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|--|
| scrupulous
(<i>'skru:pjuləs</i>)
<i>adj.</i> 谨慎的
☒ <i>heedless</i> | conscientious; exactly honest; very careful to do what is right | A <i>scrupulous</i> man never fails to give back the borrowed money to its owner.
谨慎的人绝不会不还钱给债主。 |
| sundry
(<i>'sʌndri</i>)
<i>adj.</i> 种种的
☒ <i>unique</i> | a number of; several; various | From <i>sundry</i> hints, I guessed I was to be given a bicycle for my birthday present.
从种种的暗示看来,我猜我生日时可得到一辆脚踏车。 |
| zealous
(<i>'zeləs</i>)
<i>adj.</i> 热心的
☒ <i>neglectful</i> | eager; earnest; actively enthusiastic | The children made <i>zealous</i> efforts to clean up the house for the Christmas party. 孩子们为了圣诞宴会,热心努力地打扫屋子。 |

Exercise 9.1 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The troops in the besieged town gave a(an) _____ shout at the sight of new troops advancing to help them.
2. No one would think it _____ to weep at the death of a friend.
3. They were glad they had survived the _____ and met with no disaster.
4. We are told that the potentialities of the human brain are _____.
5. In olden times soldiers _____ a conquered city and often gained great wealth.

【解答】 1. exultant 2. maudlin 3. calamity 4. inexhaustible
5. plundered

~~~~~《第二部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|---|
| altruistic
[æltru'istik]
<i>n.</i> 利他的
反 <i>selfish</i> | thoughtful of the welfare of others; unselfish | We wonder if human beings are primarily <i>altruistic</i> or selfish.
不知道人类根本上是利他还是利己。 |
| clamor
['klæmə]
<i>n.</i> 叫嚣
反 <i>silence</i> | a loud confused noise or shouting; uproar | The public <i>clamor</i> for lower taxes continued year after year.
人民年年持续着呼吁降低税率。 |
| disintegrate
(dis'intigreit)
<i>v.</i> 风化
反 <i>assemble</i> | break up into small pieces | The old manuscripts had been <i>disintegrated</i> into a pile of fragments and dust. 陈旧的手稿已风化成一堆碎片和纸屑。 |
| forebear
('fɔ:bɛə)
<i>n.</i> 祖先
反 <i>descendant</i> | an ancestor; forefather | Although Napoleon was Corsican, he is considered by most modern Frenchmen to have been French as their own <i>forebears</i> . 虽然拿破仑是科西嘉岛人，可是今日大多数的法国人仍认为他是他们的祖先法国人。 |
| intact
(in'tækt)
<i>adj.</i> 原封不动的
反 <i>damaged</i> | as if untouched; uninjured; whole | The money was returned <i>intact</i> by the boy who found it on the street. 那男孩把路上发现的钱，原封不动地送回去。 |
| molest
(mou'lest)
<i>v.</i> 骚扰
反 <i>soothe</i> | trouble or annoy intentionally; interfere with trouble | We did not <i>molest</i> the big dog, because we were afraid of him.
我们没有去惊扰那只大狗，因为我们怕它。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|---|
| profuse
(prə'fju:s)
<i>adj.</i> 很多的
反 sparing | very abundant; generous | The mourner's <i>profuse</i> tears at the burial were heartbreaking.
丧礼时,送葬者太多的泪水使人哀伤。 |
| slack (slæk)
<i>adj.</i> 懒惰的;
疏忽的
反 agile | careless; not tight or firm; sluggish | He was <i>slack</i> in fulfilling his promises and responsibilities.
他对约定的事及其职责敷衍了事。 |
| tart (ta:t)
<i>adj.</i> 酸的
反 sweet | acid tasting; not sweet; sour; sarcastic | <i>Tart</i> apples taste sharp and are pleasantly acid in their taste.
酸苹果的味道酸,但酸得令人舒服。 |
| viable
('vaiəbl)
<i>adj.</i> 可成立的
反 impracticable | able to succeed in operation; able to keep alive; livable | This plan looks all right in principle, but in practice it wouldn't be <i>viable</i> . 这个计划原则上没问题,可是事实上却无法成立。 |

Exercise 9.2 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The speaker could hardly be heard above the _____ of the uproaring crowd.
2. Don't be _____ in your efforts till the work is completely finished.
3. The dog that _____ sheep has to be driven out immediately.
4. A(An) _____ person is thoughtful of the welfare of the others.
5. Few buildings in the bombs city remained _____.

【解答】 1. clamor 2. slack 3. molests 4. altruistic 5. intact

~~~~~《第三部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|---|
| aslant [ə'sla:nt]
<i>adj.</i> 斜的
反 <i>straight</i> | not straight or level; sloping | The carpenter made the roof <i>aslant</i> to allow water to run down. 木匠把屋顶造斜使水能流下。 |
| concede
[kən'si:d]
<i>v.</i> 承认
反 <i>contradict</i> | admit as true; acknowledge | They <i>conceded</i> that victory was no longer attainable and agreed to a negotiated surrender. 他们承认无法获胜，并同意谈判投降。 |
| distrust
[dis'trust]
<i>v.</i> 不信任
反 <i>confide</i> | have no confidence in; not trust; be suspicious of; doubt | She could not allow the stranger to enter her house, for she <i>distrusted</i> him. 她不允许那个陌生人进入房子，因为她不信任他。 |
| groggy ['grɒgi]
<i>adj.</i> 不稳的
反 <i>steady</i> | weak because of illness; unsteady | The table is very <i>groggy</i> . I think the leg is going to fall off. 那桌子非常不稳。我想桌脚快断了。 |
| intrepid
[in'trepɪd]
<i>adj.</i> 勇敢的
反 <i>timid</i> | showing no fear; brave; fearless; courageous | The <i>intrepid</i> fireman saved persons trapped in a burning building disregarding of his own safety. 勇敢的救火员，不顾自己的安全，救出了困在失火屋中的人。 |
| overbearing
[əʊvə'bɛriŋ]
<i>adj.</i> 傲慢的
反 <i>humble</i> | arrogant; forcing others to one's own will; haughty | We found it hard to like the boy because of his <i>overbearing</i> manners. 因那男孩傲慢的态度，我们发觉很难喜欢他。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|---|
| rash
[raʃ]
<i>adj.</i> 鲁莽的；冒失的
[回] deliberate | foolishly bold; not thinking enough of the results; reckless | Only a rash person would have rushed into the burning house to save some clothes.
只有鲁莽的人才会冲进失火的屋中,去救一些衣服。 |
| sporadic
[spə'rædɪk]
<i>adj.</i> 零星的
[回] regular | happening irregularly; scattered in time; occasional | Though polio has been practically wiped out, there have been sporadic cases of the disease.
虽然小儿麻痹症已差不多被消灭,可是仍有一些零星的病例。 |
| toxic
['tòksik]
<i>adj.</i> 有毒的
[回] harmless | related to or caused by poisonous substance; poisonous | Fumes from automobiles and factory chimneys are toxic .
汽车和工厂烟囱所排出的烟是有毒的。 |

Exercise 9.3 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- When I left my bed after my long illness, I felt too _____ to stand.
- The government _____ defeat as soon as the election results were known.
- He keeps his money at home because he _____ banks.
- It is _____ to cross the street without looking at both ways.
- The _____ persons traveled west in spite of hardships and constant danger of Indian attack.

【解答】 1. groggy 2. conceded 3. distrusts 4. rash 5. intrepid

(第四部分)

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|--|
| avert
[ə've:t]
<i>v.</i> 避免;防止
◎ encounter | turn aside or away; prevent happening; avoid; prevent | The driver averted an accident by a quick turn of the steering wheel. 那司机将方向盘急转,避免了一次意外。 |
| deduce
[di'dju:s]
<i>v.</i> 推论
◎ induce | reach a conclusion by reasoning; infer | Mother deduced from my loss of appetites what had happened to the cookies. 母亲从我没有食欲,推知饼干是怎么回事了。 |
| embark
[im'bɑ:k]
<i>v.</i> 1. 搭载
◎ disembark | 1. go on board a ship, aircraft, or other vehicle
2.从事;着手 | Our ship embarked passengers and wool at an Australian port. 我们的船在澳洲港口载了乘客及羊毛。
After leaving college, the young man embarked on a new business career. 那年轻人大学毕业后,从事一项新行业。 |
| humiliate
[hju(:)mili'eit]
<i>v.</i> 使丢脸
◎ encourage | cause to feel humble; lower the pride or dignity; mortify | The boy humiliated his parents by behaving badly in front of the guests. 那男孩在客人面前表现不好,使父母失面子。 |
| joyful
['dʒou'vʃəl]
<i>adj.</i> 快乐的
◎ sorrowful | full of good humor; friendly; jolly; convivial | A gregarious man, he enjoyed the companionship of a large number of joyful friends. 他是爱社交的人,喜欢和一大群快乐的朋友作伴。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|---|
| pastime
[ˈpɑ:staim]
<i>n.</i> 消遣；娱乐 | a pleasant way of passing time; amusement; recreation as a game or sport | Baseball has been called America's national <i>pastime</i> through four seasons.
棒球一直被称为美国全国性的四季消遣。 |
| renounce
[ri'nauns]
<i>v.</i> 放弃 | give up entirely; forego; relinquish | The prince <i>renounced</i> his right to the throne.
王子放弃王位继承权。 |
| claim | | |
| snug [snʌg]
<i>adj.</i> 温暖的 | sheltered and warm; comfortable; cosy | My grandmother likes to read a newspaper in a <i>snug</i> corner near the fireplace. 我祖母喜欢在火炉旁的温暖角落里看报纸。 |
| uncomfortable | | |
| umpteen
['ʌmpti:n]
<i>adj.</i> 很多的 | of a very large number | She doesn't need to borrow a book because she's got <i>umpteen</i> books waiting to be read at home. 她不需要借书, 因为家中已有大堆的书等着她去看。 |
| few | | |

Exercise 9.4 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

- Her instructions are so complicated that I cannot _____ from them what she wants.
- The little cat has found a(an) _____ corner behind the stove.
- Santa Claus is pictured as a(an) _____ old fellow with long beard on his face and a large bag on his back.
- The shipwrecked sailors _____ all hope of rescue and were floating on the sea.
- Hunting and fishing are _____ ardently followed by the devotees of

those sports.

【解答】 1. deduce 2. snug 3. jovial 4. renounced 5. pastimes

~~~~~《第五部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                               | MEANING                                                             | TYPICAL USE                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>blur</b> [bleə]<br>v. 弄脏<br>□ purify            | make less clear in form or outline                                  | The boy <i>blurred</i> the picture by touching it before the paint was dry. 那男孩在颜料未干前用手碰，弄脏了画。 |
| <b>demolish</b> [di'molɪʃ]<br>v. 破坏<br>□ construct | destroy; pull or tear down                                          | The slums were <i>demolished</i> before the town was extended. 此镇在扩展前，先扫除了贫民窟。                 |
| <b>enslave</b> [ɪn'sleɪv]<br>v. 奴役<br>□ liberate   | make into a slave; take away freedom from                           | Education makes people easy to govern but impossible to <i>enslave</i> . 教育使人容易去管理，但不可能去奴役。    |
| <b>impede</b> [ɪm'pi:d]<br>v. 阻碍<br>□ spur         | get in the way of; make something difficult to do; hinder; obstruct | Many a man is <i>impeded</i> in his career by a lack of belief in himself. 许多人因缺乏自信，而阻碍了自己的成功。 |
| <b>lull</b> [lʌl]<br>v. 使入睡；使安静<br>□ excite        | soothe with sounds or caresses; make calm; quiet                    | The mother <i> lulled</i> the baby to sleep by singing a song. 母亲唱歌使婴儿入睡。                      |

| WORD                                                    | MEANING                                                                                           | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>plaintiff</b><br>[pleintif]<br><i>n.</i> 原告          | a person who begins a lawsuit                                                                     | In the court the <i>plaintiff</i> asserted that the thief had stolen two hundred dollars from his store.<br>法庭上,原告声称小偷从他店里偷去两百元。                                        |
| <b>defendant</b>                                        |                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>robust</b><br>[rə'bʌst, rou-]<br><i>adj.</i> 强壮的     | having or showing very good health; strong and healthy                                            | He was strong and healthy, but he's never been <i>robust</i> since his illness. 他健康有力,可是自从生病后,就不再强壮了。                                                                   |
| <b>weak</b>                                             |                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>strenuous</b><br>['strenjʊəs]<br><i>adj.</i> 辛苦的     | very active; full of energy; requiring much effort                                                | We had a <i>strenuous</i> day moving into our new house.<br>我们辛苦一天,搬进了新居。                                                                                               |
| <b>idle</b>                                             |                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>viti ate</b> ['vɪsiət]<br><i>v.</i> 1. 使污浊<br>2. 使无效 | 1. weaken or spoil; harm the quality of<br>2. destroy the legal force or authority of; invalidate | Pollution from smoke and dust <i>vitiates</i> the air. 烟尘的污染使空气污浊。<br>All his attempts to improve were <i>viti ated</i> by his lack of will-power. 由于缺乏意志力,他想改良的尝试全部无效。 |
| <b>purge</b>                                            |                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                         |

**Exercise 9.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The child's hysterical crying \_\_\_\_\_ the doctor from completing his examination.
2. They are going to \_\_\_\_\_ that old building to clear the road for a new highway.
3. Water spilled on the letter and \_\_\_\_\_ the writing.
4. He has a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ appearance though he is not actually well.

5. The contract was \_\_\_\_\_ because one person signed it under compulsion.

**【解答】** 1. impeded 2. demolish 3. blurred 4. robust 5. vitiated

成 果 测 验

**Exercise 9.6** 由第二栏中选出第一栏各词的反义词:

| COLUMN I       | COLUMN II     |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1. tart        | (A) steady    |
| 2. intrepid    | (B) purge     |
| 3. sporadic    | (C) unmoved   |
| 4. devastate   | (D) build     |
| 5. vitiate     | (E) heedless  |
| 6. groggy      | (F) plaintiff |
| 7. demolish    | (G) fertilize |
| 8. maudlin     | (H) sweet     |
| 9. defendant   | (I) cowardly  |
| 10. scrupulous | (J) regular   |

**【解答】** 1. H 2. I 3. J 4. G 5. B 6. A 7. D 8. C 9. F 10. E

**Exercise 9.7** 选出最适合句意的一个单词:

1. The decay of moral principles rapidly \_\_\_\_\_ the Roman society.  
(A) thwarted                   (B) disintegrated

2. She has \_\_\_\_\_ all hope of going to Europe this year for lack of

money.

- (A) embarked                    (B) renounced

3. The whole town was \_\_\_\_\_ by the war flames.

- (A) devastated                    (B) extorted

4. The \_\_\_\_\_ soldier carries out a dangerous mission, without letting fear prevent him from doing.

- (A) intrepid                    (B) viable

5. We had a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ day moving into our new house.

- (A) overbearing                    (B) strenuous

6. The nurse treated the wounded soldier with the most \_\_\_\_\_ care.

- (A) scrupulous                    (B) venomous

7. We've \_\_\_\_\_ all her arguments and she has nothing more to say.

- (A) plundered                    (B) demolished

8. It is \_\_\_\_\_ to cross the street without looking both ways.

- (A) indulgent                    (B) rash

9. The fumes from furnaces and motor vehicles have \_\_\_\_\_ the air we breathe and shortened our life expectancy.

- (A) vitiated                    (B) averted

10. He had no choice but to \_\_\_\_\_ that he had been guilty of bad judgment.

- (A) concede                    (B) conceit

【解答】 1. B 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B 6. A 7. B 8. B 9. A 10. A

**Exercise 9.8** 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. *altruistic social animal*  
 (A) critical (B) gregarious (C) temporary (D) selfish
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. *adjacent farmhouse*  
 (A) wealthy (B) noisy (C) distant (D) splendid
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. *sundry articles*  
 (A) fine (B) opposed (C) gloomy (D) unique
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. *a rash promise*  
 (A) deliberate (B) sluggish (C) rare (D) reckless
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. *exultant over success*  
 (A) mournful (B) lack (C) zealous (D) indifferent

【解答】 1. D    2. C    3. D    4. A    5. A

**Exercise 9.9** 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：

#### VOCABULARY LIST

|            |         |               |          |
|------------|---------|---------------|----------|
| scrupulous | rash    | intrepid      | calamity |
| zealous    | deduced | inexhaustible | intact   |
| impeded    | viable  | distrusted    | concede  |

1. The salesman seems very \_\_\_\_\_ to persuade the housewife to buy the book.
2. When the fire broke out the party turned to be a complete \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The deep snow and the extreme cold \_\_\_\_\_ our travel to Canada.
4. I'm willing to \_\_\_\_\_ that a large car would have cost more, but I still think we should have bought one.
5. A (An) \_\_\_\_\_ judge is careful to weigh all the evidence and excludes all personal feelings.

6. From the fact that Socrates was a man and the principle all men die, I \_\_\_\_\_ that Socrates would die.
7. The new president is a man of a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ energy.
8. They didn't believe him. In fact, they \_\_\_\_\_ him in all matters.
9. Only controlled disarmament can make a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ world in this nuclear age.
10. The second generation kept the family fortune entire; the heiress kept her father's art collection completely \_\_\_\_\_.

【解答】 1. zealous 2. calamity 3. impeded 4. concede  
5. scrupulous 6. deduced 7. inexhaustible  
8. distrusted 9. viable 10. intact

本书由台湾学习出版公司  
授权海南(三环)出版社在  
大陆出版,翻印必究。

## LESSON 10

## 预备测验

①选出最适当的答案：

1. He was *suspended* from school for a week \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) to help his father (B) for bad conduct (C) to study more
2. Though they *disapproved* of the details, they were in \_\_\_\_\_ agreement over the plan.  
 (A) eccentric (B) substantial (C) nebulous
3. A coward soldier *eludes* hazardous duty by \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) aggrieving (B) wrangling (C) malingering.
4. The *offence* was such a minor \_\_\_\_\_ of manners that everyone overlooked it.  
 (A) breach (B) obstruction (C) overdue
5. The Roman Empire rapidly *waned* in \_\_\_\_\_ in the 5th century.  
 (A) victory (B) power (C) success

△ 答案 △  
 1. B 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. B

## 《第一部分》

| WORD                        | MEANING                                                 | TYPICAL USE                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>aggrieve</b><br>[əgri:v] | cause grief or trouble to; injure unjustly<br>v. 迫害     | The entire population was <b>aggrieved</b> by the tyranny of the king.<br>全国人民受到那国王暴政的迫害。         |
| <b>console</b>              |                                                         |                                                                                                   |
| <b>callous</b><br>['kæləs]  | 1. unfeeling; not sensitive; insensible<br>adj. 1. 硬心肠的 | Only a <b>callous</b> person can see suffering without trying to relieve it. 只有硬心肠的人能看到苦难而不设法拯救之。 |
| <b>sensitive</b>            |                                                         |                                                                                                   |

| WORD                                                          | MEANING                                                           | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2. 变硬的(如脚底起硬茧)<br>callous<br>[kə'lu:s]                        | 2. hard and thick; hardened.                                      | Walking barefoot on the asphalt pavement makes the bottom of your feet <b>callous</b> . 赤脚走在柏油路上会使你的脚底生硬茧。                    |
| disapprove<br>[dɪ'səpru:v]<br>v. 不赞成<br>consent<br>[kən'sent] | have an unfavorable or bad opinion of; express an opinion against | She wants to continue her study in the United States, but her parents <b>disapprove</b> of her plan. 她要在美国继续求学,可是她的父母不同意她的计划。 |
| fabulous<br>['fæbjulos]<br>adj. 惊人的<br>true<br>[tru:]         | nearly unbelievable; hard or impossible to believe                | Ten dollars is a <b>fabulous</b> price for an ordinary pencil. 一支普通的铅笔要十元,价格真惊人。                                              |
| infuriate<br>[in'fjuərieit]<br>v. 激怒<br>placate<br>[plə'keɪt] | make very angry; make furious                                     | He was <b>infuriated</b> by the policeman's rough treatment of his wife. 他因警察粗鲁地对待他太太而大怒。                                     |
| mordant<br>['mɔ:dənt]<br>adj. 尖酸的;<br>讽刺的<br>mild<br>[mɪld]   | biting and cutting; severe; sarcastic                             | His political opponents feared his <b>mordant</b> tongue, and even more his <b>mordant</b> pen. 他的政治对手害怕他尖酸刻薄的口才,更怕他讽刺的文章。    |
| prowess<br>['praʊəs]<br>n. 勇敢<br>cowardice<br>[kə'wɔ:dɪsəs]   | great personal bravery; daring; courage; valor                    | The Indians sang a song of victory, describing their <b>prowess</b> in battle. 印第安人唱一首胜利之歌,描述他们在战役中的勇敢。                       |

| WORD                                                                          | MEANING                                               | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>subversive</b><br>[sʌb'versɪv]<br><i>adj.</i> 颠覆的<br>☒ <b>constructive</b> | tending to overthrow; causing ruin; destructive       | He was arrested as a member of a <b>subversive</b> organization advocating the forceful overthrow of the present government. 他以一名颠覆组织分子的身份被捕，此组织主张以武力推翻现在的政府。 |
| <b>temporary</b><br>['tempərəri]<br><i>adj.</i> 暂时的<br>☒ <b>permanent</b>     | lasting only a limited time; not permanent; transient | Many students find <b>temporary</b> jobs during their summer holidays.<br>许多学生在暑假找到暂时的工作。                                                                     |
| <b>Exercise 10.1</b> 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：                                  |                                                       |                                                                                                                                                               |

1. Do you think it is right for women to paint their lips or do you \_\_\_\_\_?
2. Two firemen showed great \_\_\_\_\_ by repeatedly rushing into the burning building to save many lives.
3. The parent was deeply \_\_\_\_\_ by his children's disobedience.
4. The teacher's \_\_\_\_\_ comment about the girl's essay made her cry.
5. The hunter made a (an) \_\_\_\_\_ shelter out of branches to avoid the heavy rain.

【解答】 1. disapprove 2. prowess 3. aggrieved 4. mordant  
5. temporary

## 《第二部分》

| WORD                                                                         | MEANING                                                     | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>amass</b><br>[ə'mæs]<br><i>v.</i> 积蓄<br>☒ <b>dissipate</b>                | heap together; gather; accumulate                           | Through the years he <i>amassed</i> a large fortune to buy a farm after he retired. 他退休后,以多年积蓄的大笔财富买了一座农场。 |
| <b>colossal</b> [kə'lɔsl]<br><i>adj.</i> 巨大的<br>☒ <b>trivial</b>             | of huge size; gigantic; vast; tremendous                    | The Empire State Building is a <i>colossal</i> structure.<br>帝国大厦是巨大的建筑物。                                  |
| <b>dismal</b> ['dizməl]<br><i>adj.</i> 沮丧的<br>☒ <b>joyous</b>                | dark and gloomy; dreary; somber                             | Sickness or bad luck often makes a person feel <i>dismal</i> .<br>生病或坏运经常使人沮丧。                             |
| <b>genial</b><br>['dʒi:njəl]<br><i>adj.</i> 亲切的<br>☒ <b>sullen</b>           | cheerful and friendly; smiling and pleasant; kindly; jovial | She was glad to see us again and gave me a <i>genial</i> welcome.<br>她很高兴再看到我们,并亲切的欢迎我。                    |
| <b>inveterate</b><br>[in'vetərit]<br><i>adj.</i> 习惯性的<br>☒ <b>occasional</b> | confirmed in habit, practice, or feeling; habitual          | It is hard for an <i>inveterate</i> smoker to give up tobacco.<br>老烟鬼很难戒烟。                                 |
| <b>offence</b><br>[ə'fens]<br><i>n.</i> 犯罪;触犯<br>☒ <b>defence</b>            | the act of breaking the law; sin; wrong; crime              | The punishment for that <i>offence</i> is two years in prison.<br>那项罪的刑罚是监禁两年。                             |
| <b>sojourn</b><br>['sədʒə:n]<br><i>v. n.</i> 寄居<br>☒ <b>departure</b>        | stay for a time; a brief stay                               | During his <i>sojourn</i> in Africa he learned much about native customs. 他在寄居非洲期间,学得了许多当地的风俗。             |

| WORD                                                         | MEANING                                                            | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>turmoil</b><br>[tə'moil]<br><i>n.</i> 混乱<br>反 tranquility | a state of confusion, excitement, and trouble, disturbance; tumult | Six robberies in one night put our village in a <i>turmoil</i> .<br>一夜六次抢劫案使得我们全村陷入混乱。                                             |
| <b>suspend</b><br>[səs'pend]<br><i>v.</i> 暂停<br>反 schedule   | put off or stop for a period of time; postpone                     | A scientist <i>suspends</i> judgment and refrains from drawing conclusions until all the facts are in.<br>科学家在未具备全部事实前,暂时不加判断或下结论。 |

**Exercise 10.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- It is sometimes difficult to acknowledge that another person's lot may be more \_\_\_\_\_ than one's own.
- Disturbing the place and breaking most traffic laws are \_\_\_\_\_ in this country.
- My acquaintance made a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ fortune in the last ten years.
- Train service will be \_\_\_\_\_ from midnight to 4 a. m. to permit repair.
- The noise of cars passing along the road is a continual \_\_\_\_\_ to our quiet at home.

【解答】 1. dismal 2. offences 3. colossal 4. suspended 5. turmoil

### 《第三部分》

| WORD                                                    | MEANING                                         | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>assent</b><br>[ə'sent]<br><i>v.</i> 同意<br>反 disagree | agree to a suggestion; express agreement; agree | She <i>assented</i> to the doctor's assertion that her son was ill, but could not consent to having him hospitalized. 她同意医生诊断说她儿子生病,但不同意让他住院。 |

| WORD                                                    | MEANING                                                             | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>cosy</b> [ˈkouzi]<br><i>adj.</i> 温暖而舒适的              | warm and comfortable; snug                                          | The couple wish to live in a <i>cosy</i> little home rather than in a big mansion.<br>那对夫妇宁愿住在温暖舒适的小屋中,而不愿住在大厦里。          |
| <b>uncomfortable</b>                                    |                                                                     |                                                                                                                           |
| <b>diversify</b><br>[dai'və:sifai]<br><i>v.</i> 使多样化    | make different or various in form or quality; vary                  | That factory is trying to <i>diversify</i> its products to sell in different markets. 那家工厂试着使货品多样化,以卖到不同的市场。              |
| <b>simplify</b>                                         |                                                                     |                                                                                                                           |
| <b>haggard</b><br>['hægəd]<br><i>adj.</i> 憔悴的           | looking worn from pain, fatigue, or hunger; gaunt                   | The <i>haggard</i> faces of the rescued miners showed that they had a great deal of sufferings.<br>被救出的矿工们憔悴的脸色显示受到极大的痛苦。 |
| <b>fat</b>                                              |                                                                     |                                                                                                                           |
| <b>irreparable</b><br>[i'reparəbl]<br><i>adj.</i> 无法挽救的 | cannot be repaired or made good                                     | Careless drivers cause many <i>irreparable</i> accidents.<br>大意的司机造成许多无法挽救的意外。                                            |
| <b>reparable</b>                                        |                                                                     |                                                                                                                           |
| <b>paternal</b><br>[pe'tə:nl]<br><i>adj.</i> 父系的        | of or like a father; fatherly                                       | Everyone has two <i>paternal</i> grandparents and two maternal grandparents. 每个人都有两个属于父系的祖父母和母系的祖父母。                      |
| <b>maternal</b>                                         |                                                                     |                                                                                                                           |
| <b>replica</b><br>[replikə]<br><i>n.</i> 复制品            | a copy of a work of art, especially one made by the original artist | The young artist made a <i>replica</i> of the famous painting.<br>那位年轻的画家照着名画摹仿了一幅。                                       |
| <b>original</b>                                         |                                                                     |                                                                                                                           |

| WORD                                                                 | MEANING                                              | TYPICAL USE                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>seclusion</b><br>[si'lklu:ʒən]<br><i>n.</i> 隔离; 隐居<br>☒ publicity | the act of keeping away from others                  | His <b>seclusion</b> of the rabbit in the barn was kept secret from everyone else.<br>他把兔子藏在谷仓里, 不为人知。 |
| <b>wrangle</b><br>[ræŋgl]<br><i>v.</i> 争吵<br>☒ coincide              | argue or dispute in a noisy or angry way;<br>quarrel | The two friends <b>wrangle</b> and now they don't speak to each other. 那两个朋友争吵后, 现在不再和对方说话。            |

**Exercise 10.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The little boy was a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ of his father in looks and voice.
2. To \_\_\_\_\_ one's reading is to read about a number of different subjects.
3. The house is not \_\_\_\_\_ tonight because our air conditioner is not working.
4. Hunger and suffering made the lost hikers \_\_\_\_\_.
5. She lives in \_\_\_\_\_ apart even from her closest friends.

【解答】 1. replica 2. diversify 3. cosy 4. haggard 5. seclusion

#### ~~~~~《第四部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                                            | MEANING                                                                              | TYPICAL USE                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>bigoted</b><br>[bi'gɔtid]<br><i>adj.</i> 固执己见的<br>☒ tolerant | holding fast to an opinion, belief, party, or other position; intolerant; prejudiced | Most <b>bigoted</b> people are intolerant of opposition.<br>多数固执己见的人受不了反对意见。 |

| WORD                                                                     | MEANING                                                   | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>deficient</b><br>[dɪ'fɪʃənt]<br><i>adj.</i> 不足的<br>[反] sufficient     | not complete; defective; imperfect                        | Most of the food they eat is <i>deficient</i> in iron and protein.<br>他们吃的大部分食物缺乏铁质和蛋白质。                                        |
| <b>elude</b><br>[ɪ'lju:d]<br><i>v.</i> 躲避<br>[反] encounter               | escape from by means of a trick                           | The sly fox <i>eluded</i> the hunters by running back in the opposite direction. 狡猾的狐狸向相反的方向跑，躲过了猎人。                            |
| <b>ignoble</b><br>[ɪg'nəubl]<br><i>adj.</i> 卑微的<br>[反] noble             | without honor; disgraceful; mean                          | Some very great men have come from <i>ignoble</i> families.<br>有些非常伟大的人是来自卑微的家庭。                                                |
| <b>kindred</b><br>['kɪndrid]<br><i>adj.</i> 同类的<br>[反] foreign           | related; belonging to the same group                      | We are studying about dew, frost, mist, and other <i>kindred</i> facts of nature.<br>我们正在研究有关露、霜、雾以及其他同类的自然现象。                  |
| <b>melancholy</b><br>['melənkləli]<br><i>adj.</i> 忧郁的<br>[反] exhilarated | sad; gloomy; depressed in spirits; lamentable; deplorable | During the Romantic period it was fashionable in literature to have a <i>melancholy</i> outlook on the world. 浪漫时期，文学界流行悲观的世界观。 |
| <b>poltroon</b><br>[pol'tru:n]<br><i>n.</i> 懦夫<br>[反] valor              | a wretched coward                                         | No one likes to be regarded as a <i>poltroon</i> .<br>没有人喜欢被认为是懦夫。                                                              |
| <b>rout</b> [raʊt]<br><i>v.</i> 溃败<br>[反] surrender                      | defeat completely and drive away                          | The enemy was <i>routed</i> .<br>敌军被击溃了。                                                                                        |

| WORD                                                                 | MEANING                                          | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>vulnerable</b><br>[vəl'nərəbl]<br><i>adj.</i> 难防守的<br>☒ protected | open to attack; can be easily wounded or injured | The most massive defence system would still leave the nation <b>vulnerable</b> to nuclear attack.<br>最强大的防卫系统仍然难以防止国家受核武器的攻击。 |
|                                                                      |                                                  |                                                                                                                               |

**Exercise 10.4** 从第四部分中选出最合适的一个单词,填入空格内:

- Weak teeth are usually caused by your diet in which calcium is \_\_\_\_\_.
- Pollution of its drinking water left the city \_\_\_\_\_ to many diseases.
- In the slums of some cities even small children learn \_\_\_\_\_ language.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ news that the king is seriously ill made all of us pray God for his quick recovery.
- The baseball team \_\_\_\_\_ its opponents by a score of ten to one.

【解答】 1. deficient 2. vulnerable 3. ignoble 4. melancholy  
5. routed

~~~~~(第五部分)~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---------------------------------------|---|
| abide
[ə'baid]
<i>v.</i> 居住
☒ depart | remain; stay; wait | The child abided with his grandparents for three years before being returned to his parents.
那孩子被送回父母身边前,跟祖父母同住了三年。 |
| boisterous
['boistərəs]
<i>adj.</i> 喧闹的
☒ silent | noisily cheerful and rough; exuberant | The audience in the theater was irritated by the unruly and boisterous children. 戏院的观众被任性的尖叫声和喧闹的孩子所激怒。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|--|
| despicable
[despikəbl]
<i>adj.</i> 可鄙的
☒ admirable | deserving to be despised; contemptible | To spit in the classroom is <i>despicable</i> .
在教室吐痰是卑劣的。 |
| exotic
[eg'zɔtik]
<i>adj.</i> 外来的
☒ domestic | from a foreign country; not native; strange and unusual | We saw many <i>exotic</i> plants at the flower exhibition, which we had never seen before. 花展中, 我们看到许多以前从未见过的外来植物。 |
| imperative
[im'perətiv]
<i>adj.</i> 1. 必需的
☒ unnecessary | 1. urgent; essential; which must be done | For the mountain climber, it is <i>imperative</i> to get food and water before sunset. 那个登山者必须在日落前得到食物和水。 |
| | 2. expressing a command, request, or warning | My wife has such an <i>imperative</i> voice that everyone obeys her.
我太太用一种命令式的声音, 以使每个人都服从她。 |
| nonplus
['nɔnplʌs]
<i>v.</i> 使困惑
☒ hearten | puzzle completely; make unable to say or do something; confuse | He was <i>nonplused</i> by the strange customs he saw everywhere in the country.
他在这国各地看到的奇怪习俗, 困惑了他。 |
| pompous
['pompəs]
<i>adj.</i> 夸大的
☒ informal | foolishly solemn and self-important; pretentious | The leader of the band bowed in a <i>pompous</i> manner.
乐队队长以夸大的姿势鞠了个躬。 |
| sever [s'evə]
<i>v.</i> 分开; 断绝
☒ connect | break or cut apart; cut off; separate | He <i>severed</i> connection with Tom.
他和汤姆断绝关系。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|--|
| sultry (s'ältri)
adj. 阳热的
反 cold | hot and moist; oppressively hot | The day was so <i>sultry</i> that they had little energy left. 天气如此闷热,以致他们没有什么精力。 |
| wane
(wein)
v. (月)亏;减弱
反 wax | grow gradually smaller or less after being full or complete; diminish | The moon was <i>waning</i> , and in such a <i>waning</i> light, it is very difficult to see the enemy. 月亮渐亏,而在这如此暗弱的光下,很难看见敌人。 |

Exercise 10.5 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. We were _____ to see two roads where we had expected only one.
2. The railway guard was a (an) _____ little official, who thought he controlled the whole railway system himself.
3. It is _____ that this very sick child should stay in bed at least for two weeks.
4. According to Greek mythology, my wife had been _____ from my own body.
5. It is _____ of you to leave your wife and children without food and money.

【解答】 1. nonplussed 2. pompous 3. imperative 4. severed

5. despicable

成果测验

Exercise 10.6 由第二栏选出第一栏各词的反义词:

COLUMN I

COLUMN II

- | | | |
|-------|---------------|------------------|
| _____ | 1. schedule | (A) constructive |
| _____ | 2. melancholy | (B) occasional |
| _____ | 3. callous | (C) publicity |
| _____ | 4. exotic | (D) suspend |
| _____ | 5. assent | (E) nonplus |
| _____ | 6. seclusion | (F) exhilarated |
| _____ | 7. subversive | (G) sensitive |
| _____ | 8. hearten | (H) domestic |
| _____ | 9. inveterate | (I) surrender |
| _____ | 10. rout | (J) disagree |

【答案】 1. D 2. F 3. G 4. H 5. J 6. C 7. A 8. E 9. B 10. I

Exercise 10.7 选出最适合句意的一个单词。

6. Everyone _____ to the dance party on Christmas Eve.
 (A) assented (B) abided
7. Where to go, and what to do when we get there, are two _____ questions.
 (A) diversified (B) kindred
8. The government dislikes this magazine because it prints _____ ideas.
 (A) subversive (B) substantial
9. I remember his name very well, but his name _____ me for the moment.
 (A) wrangles (B) eludes
10. She _____ with some relatives in London for three months.
 (A) sojourned (B) rambled

【解答】 1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. A 6. A 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. A

Exercise 10.8 找出一个与斜体词意义相反的单词：

1. *elude*
 (A) enlarge (B) enclose (C) extend (D) encounter
2. *dismal*
 (A) joyous (B) certain (C) easy (D) stern
3. *wane*
 (A) sane (B) real (C) control (D) wax
4. *seclusion*
 (A) protection (B) combination (C) publicity (D) salvage
5. *ignoble*
 (A) graceful (B) calm (C) mordant (D) genial

【解答】 1. D 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. A

Exercise 10.9 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：

VOCABULARY LIST

| | | | |
|------------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| elude | seclusion | boisterous | offence |
| infuriated | prowess | turmoil | suspended |
| diversify | wrangle | despicable | ignoble |

1. The sailor's voices could not be heard above the _____ of the storm.
2. The man was highly praised for having the _____ to go into the burning house to save the little girl.
3. To steal from the collection plate in church or from a blind beggar is _____.
4. The hurricane _____ all ferry service for three days.
5. She was simply _____ by her husband's cold indifference about her new dress.
6. The children _____ about who should sit in the front seat of the car.
7. To _____ one's routine work is to break up one's day into segments devoted to various aspects of one's job.
8. That dirty old house is a (an) _____ to everyone who lives in the street.
9. He was amazed that no one else seemed to notice the _____ cruelty with which she treated her stepsons.
10. He rented a cottage in the woods for the summer, in which he could be in _____ while he was writing.

【解答】 1. turmoil 2. prowess 3. ignoble 4. suspended
 5. infuriated 6. wrangled 7. diversify
 8. offence 9. despicable 10. seclusion

LESSON 11

预备测验

①选出最适当的答案：

1. Department stores are often *congested* _____.
 (A) after 9 o'clock in evening (B) before Christmas
 (C) on cold, windy days
2. A *judicious* parent _____ his children to decide many things for themselves.
 (A) forbids (B) encourages (C) dissuades
3. A (An) _____ person treats his work with *apathy*.
 (A) lazy (B) wise (C) old
4. _____ *simulate* flowers or leaves of a tree.
 (A) Most gardeners (B) Some people
 (C) Certain insects
5. Constant *vigilance* is necessary in order to _____ in driving.
 (A) avoid accidents (B) save gasoline
 (C) prevent engine trouble

△ 答案 △
 1. B 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A

~~~~~(第一部分)~~~~~

| WORD                                                                      | MEANING                   | TYPICAL USE                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>acclimate</b><br>[ə'klaimit]<br><i>v.</i> 习惯于<br><i>n.</i> acclimation | get used to a new climate | We are becoming <i>acclimated</i> to New York weather.<br>我们渐渐习惯了纽约的天气。 |

| WORD                                                                              | MEANING                                                   | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>assail</b><br>[ə'seɪl]<br><i>n.</i> 攻击；质问<br><i>n. adj.</i> assailant          | attack with violence or continuous criticism; assault     | The senators <i>assailed</i> the President on the subject of the treaty between the two countries. 议员们质问总统有关两国间的条约。 |
| <b>congest</b><br>[kən'dʒest]<br><i>v.</i> 充满<br><i>n.</i> congestion             | fill too full; over-crowd                                 | His face was <i>congested</i> with anger as the argument grew more heated. 争辩得更加热烈时，他的脸上充满怒意。                       |
| <b>effusive</b><br>[ɪ'fju:siv]<br><i>adj.</i> 热情的<br><i>n.</i> effusion           | showing too much feeling; too demonstrative and emotional | Her <i>effusive</i> welcome made us feel most uncomfortable. 她热情地款待，使得我们非常不自在。                                      |
| <b>frugal</b> [fru:gəl]<br><i>adj.</i> 节约的<br><i>n.</i> frugality                 | without waste; not wasteful; saving; thrifty              | A good manager is <i>frugal</i> in the use of his funds. 一个好的经营者节约使用资金。                                             |
| <b>insolvent</b><br>[in'solvənt]<br><i>adj.</i> 无力偿还的；破产的<br><i>n.</i> insolvency | unable to pay one's debt; bankrupt                        | The newspapers accused the government of being <i>insolvent</i> in its debts. 报纸指控政府无力偿还债务。                         |
| <b>nausea</b><br>[nɔ:sjə]<br><i>n.</i> 晕船<br><i>v.</i> nauseate                   | the feeling that one is about to vomit; seasick           | Most passengers of the ship were seized with <i>nausea</i> during the storm at sea.<br>船上大多数乘客在风暴中晕船。               |

| WORD                                                | MEANING                                                         | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ·redeem [ri'dem]<br>v. 赎回<br>n. redemption          | get back by payment; set free by payment; regain                | She had no way to <i>redeem</i> her furniture out of pawn.<br>她无法赎回她当掉的家具。                                               |
| seep<br>[si:p]<br>v. 渗入<br>n. seepage               | leak slowly; ooze; trickle                                      | They used waterproof cement to prevent water from <i>seeping</i> through the roof of the tunnel.<br>他们用防水的水泥阻止水从坑道的顶上渗入。 |
| symmetry<br>['simitri]<br>n. 对称<br>adj. symmetrical | exact likeness in shape between the opposite sides of something | A swollen cheek spoiled the <i>symmetry</i> of his handsome face.<br>一边肿的面颊破坏了他英俊脸庞的对称。                                  |

**Exercise 11. 1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. John is not \_\_\_\_\_; he does not pour out his emotions.
2. After paying the money, he \_\_\_\_\_ his watch from the pawnshop.
3. My aunt is a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ housekeeper who buys and uses food carefully.
4. Main Street is \_\_\_\_\_ with the traffic of people driving to work each morning.
5. Country girls cannot easily \_\_\_\_\_ themselves to working in an office.

【解答】 1. effusive 2. redeemed 3. frugal 4. congested 5. acclimate

## (第二部分)

| WORD                                                                               | MEANING                                                            | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>aggravate</b><br>[ægrə'veit]<br><i>v.</i> 使更坏<br><i>n.</i> aggravation          | make worse or more severe                                          | New York's hot weather is often <b>aggravated</b> by its humidity.<br>由于潮湿,使得纽约炎热的天气更加恶劣。                                |
| <b>balmy</b><br>['ba:mi]<br><i>adj.</i> 温和的                                        | soft and gentle; mild                                              | A <b>balmy</b> breeze was blowing across the beautiful lake.<br>一阵温和的微风拂过美丽的湖面。                                          |
| <b>culmination</b><br>[kʌl'mi'neɪʃn]<br><i>n.</i> 极点,顶点<br><i>v.</i> culminate     | the highest point; climax                                          | The <b>culmination</b> of the doctor's life's work was his discovery of a cure of cancer.<br>那位医生一生工作中最高的成就,便是在癌症治疗上的发现。 |
| <b>endorse</b><br>[in'dɔ:s]<br><i>v.</i> 签名于(票据等的)背面<br><i>n.</i> endorsement      | write one's name on the back of (a check, note, or other document) | The storekeeper <b>endorsed</b> my bill when I paid the full amount.<br>当我把钱付清时,店主在帐单后签了名。                               |
| <b>hygiene</b><br>['haɪdʒi:n]<br><i>n.</i> 卫生学<br><i>adj.</i> hygienic             | the science of keeping good health; rules of health                | The main field of <b>hygiene</b> is concerned with healthy living and cleanliness. 卫生学的主要范围和健康的生活及清洁有关。                  |
| <b>intangible</b><br>[ɪn'tændʒəbl]<br><i>adj.</i> 不能触摸的<br><i>n.</i> intangibility | not capable of being touched or felt; impalpable                   | Sound is <b>intangible</b> and the same is true of light.<br>声和光都是不可触摸的。                                                 |

| WORD                                                         | MEANING                                                                | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>oblivious</b><br>(ə'blivias)                              | not mindful; forgetful                                                 | Grandfather sat by the fireplace, <i>oblivious</i> of everything around him. 祖父坐在火炉旁,忘却了周遭的一切。               |
| <i>n.</i> 忘记的<br><b>rite</b><br>(rait)                       | a solemn ceremony; formal procedure in a religious or other observance | The funeral will be performed according to church <i>rites</i> . 葬礼将依据教会的仪式来举行。                              |
| <i>n.</i> 仪式<br><b>ritual</b>                                | adjective                                                              |                                                                                                              |
| <b>simulate</b><br>('simjuleit)                              | put on a false appearance of; pretend; feign                           | Her story was boring, but he <i>simulated</i> interest to please her. 虽然她的故事令人厌倦,但他假装有兴趣以取悦她。                |
| <i>v.</i> 假装<br><b>simulate</b><br>(simjuleit)               | copy in writing or in typewriting                                      | The account of the trial was <i>transcribed</i> from the stenographer's shorthand notes. 审判的记录由速记员的速记符号翻译出来。 |
| <i>v.</i> 以另一种文字或符号写出<br><b>transcribe</b><br>(traens'kraib) | <i>n.</i> transcript                                                   |                                                                                                              |

Exercise 11.2 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The book was so interesting that I was completely \_\_\_\_\_ of my surroundings.

2. Sharon was the heroine of the play. She \_\_\_\_\_ the bewildered mother successfully.

3. His bad temper was \_\_\_\_\_ by a headache.

4. The priest administered the last \_\_\_\_\_ to the dying man.

5. The next day his speech was \_\_\_\_\_ in the newspapers, word for word.

**【解答】** 1. oblivious 2. simulated 3. aggravated 4. rite  
5. transcribed

(第三部分)

| WORD                                                                    | MEANING                                                                                                        | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>annex</b> [ə'neks]<br><i>v.</i> 合并<br><i>n.</i> annexation           | join or add to something larger or more important                                                              | The United States <i>annexed</i> Texas in 1845.<br>1845年美国合并了德克萨斯。                                                                                                |
| <b>brew</b> [bru]<br><i>v.</i> 1. 酿造<br><i>n.</i> brewage               | 1. make (beer, ale, or mash) by soaking, boiling, and fermenting grain<br>2. bring about; plan; plot; contrive | Some people <i>brew</i> beer at home for home use.<br>有些人在家酿啤酒以供自用。<br>The boys whispering in the corner are <i>brewing</i> some mischief.<br>那些在角落说悄悄话的男孩们正企图捣乱。 |
| <b>deride</b> [di'raɪd]<br><i>v.</i> 嘲笑<br><i>adj.</i> derisive         | make fun of; laugh at in scorn                                                                                 | The boys <i>derided</i> him for his fear of the darkness.<br>男孩们嘲笑他怕黑。                                                                                            |
| <b>evaluate</b><br>[i'velju:it]<br><i>v.</i> 评估<br><i>n.</i> evaluation | find out the value or the amount of; appraise                                                                  | She always <i>evaluates</i> people by their clothes.<br>她总是由衣着来评估人。                                                                                               |

| WORD                                                                                                     | MEANING                                                                                 | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>imminent</b><br>[im'mɪnənt]<br><i>adj.</i> 即将来临的<br><i>n.</i> imminence                               | likely to happen soon; about to occur; impending; urgent                                | Swept along by the swift current, he was in <i>imminent</i> danger of going over the waterfall.<br>被一阵急速的水流冲走之后,他正面临着被冲下瀑布的危险。 |
| <b>judicious</b><br>[dʒu(:)dɪʃəs]<br><i>adj.</i> 明智的<br><i>n.</i> judiciousness                          | having, using, or showing good judgment; wise; sensible; prudent; discreet              | A <i>judicious</i> historian selects and weighs facts carefully and critically.<br>明智的历史学家以小心翼翼、批判性的态度权衡事实。                    |
| <b>preponderance</b><br>[pri'pɒndərəns]<br><i>n.</i> (数目、重量、力量之)优势<br><i>adj.</i><br><i>preponderant</i> | greater number; greater power or influence                                              | There is a <i>preponderance</i> of hot days in July and August.<br>七、八月间炎热的日子最多。                                               |
| <b>sage</b><br>[seidʒ]<br><i>adj.</i> 明智的<br><i>n.</i> sageness                                          | showing wisdom or good judgment; wise                                                   | Many <i>sage</i> staffs around the commander helped him win the battle. 司令官身旁许多明智的参谋帮助他赢了那场战役。                                 |
| <b>specter</b><br>['spekter]<br><i>n.</i> 幽灵<br><i>adj.</i> spectral                                     | a phantom or ghost, especially one of a terrifying nature or appearance; ghost; phantom | The <i>specter</i> of the murdered man haunted the house.<br>被谋杀者的鬼魂常在这间屋子出没。                                                  |

| WORD                 | MEANING                                                  | TYPICAL USE                                                      |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| tumult<br>(tju:mält) | the confused noise and excitement of a big crowd; uproar | The shout of "Fire" caused a great <i>tumult</i> in the theater. |
| n. 骚动                | ment of a big "失火"的喊叫声使得剧院大乱。                            |                                                                  |
| adj. tumultuous      | crowd; uproar                                            |                                                                  |

**Exercise 11.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The defeated team was greeted by a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ of angry voices of the crowd.
2. There is a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ of tigers in the forest, and only a small number of monkeys and elephants.
3. The expedition has now returned, and its members are beginning to \_\_\_\_\_ and integrate the facts gathered in the field and at the base.
4. The old professor gave us \_\_\_\_\_ advice, which we have never forgotten.
5. Her little daughter cried in her bed, saying she had seen a dreadful \_\_\_\_\_ in her dream.

【解答】 1. tumult 2. preponderance 3. evaluate 4. sage 5. specter

~~~~~(第四部分)~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|-----------------|--|---|
| apathy ('æpəθi) | lack of interest or desire for activity; indifference; unconcern | Her <i>apathy</i> since her husband's death worries her children. |
| n. 漠不关心;
冷漠 | | |
| adj. apathetic | | 自从丈夫死后,她的冷漠使孩子们感到忧虑。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|---|
| collide
[kə'laid]
<i>v.</i> 冲突
<i>n.</i> collision | rush against each other; crush | If the aims of two countries <i>collide</i> , there may be a war. 两国的目标如果冲突,可能引起战争。 |
| drape
[drēip]
<i>v.</i> 悬挂
<i>n.</i> drapery | cover or hang with cloth falling loosely in folds as a decoration | The buildings were <i>draped</i> with red, white, and blue bunting. 屋子上悬挂着红白蓝三色的旗帜。 |
| fatuous
['fætjuəs]
<i>adj.</i> 愚昧的
<i>n.</i> fatuity | stupid; foolish; ridiculous; silly | After his boring speech for over an hour, the <i>fatuous</i> speaker waited for applause from the audience. 经过一小时多令人厌倦的演讲后,那愚昧的演说者期待着听众的掌声。 |
| impudent
['impjudənt]
<i>adj.</i> 厚颜的
<i>n.</i> impudence | without shame or modesty; rudely bold; insolent; impertinent | The <i>impudent</i> boy made faces at the teacher.
那厚颜的男孩对老师扮鬼脸。 |
| meditate
['mediteit]
<i>v.</i> 考虑
<i>adj.</i> meditative | think quietly; consider carefully for a long time; reflect | I could have given a much better answer if I had had enough time to <i>meditate</i> .
若是我有足够的时间来考虑,便能有一个好得多的回答。 |
| purify
['pjuerifai]
<i>v.</i> 洗除罪恶
<i>n.</i> purification | make pure; cleanse | This music seems to <i>purify</i> one's spirit of evil thoughts.
这音乐似乎能消除人罪恶的念头。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|--|
| sagacious
[sə'geɪʃəs]
<i>adj.</i> 精明的
<i>n.</i> sagacity | having a sharp or keen mind and good judgment; shrewd | A <i>sagacious</i> businessman seldom fails in his business.
精明的商人在生意上很少失败。 |
| suave
[swa:v, sweiv]
<i>adj.</i> 文雅的
<i>n.</i> suavity | smoothly agreeable or polite; showing good manners | The secretary's beautiful figure and <i>suave</i> manners made the office bright. 秘书美丽的身材及文雅的态度,使得办公室为之一亮。 |
| vigilance
['vidʒiləns]
<i>n.</i> 警醒
<i>adj.</i> vigilant | watchful care; watchfulness; alertness | The watchman who caught the thief was praised for his <i>vigilance</i> . 那抓到小偷的巡夜者,因其警觉受到赞赏。 |

Exercise 11. 4 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- After we had waited for about twenty minutes, a (an) _____ man came along and tried to get in at the head of our line.
- The citizen's _____ to local affairs resulted in poor government.
- This salt has been specially _____ for use in medicine.
- The cat watched the mousehole with _____.
- He _____ for two days before giving his final answer.

【解答】 1. impudent 2. apathy 3. purified 4. vigilance
5. meditated

成果测验

Exercise 11.5 将各词的适当词性填入空格内：

| ADJECTIVE | NOUN | VERB | ADVERB |
|--------------|---------------|----------|--------|
| 1. _____ | preponderance | _____ | _____ |
| 2. _____ | _____ | deride | _____ |
| 3. _____ | _____ | redeem | ××× |
| 4. _____ | nausea | _____ | _____ |
| 5. sagacious | _____ | ××× | _____ |
| 6. _____ | balm | ××× | _____ |
| 7. _____ | _____ | simulate | _____ |
| 8. effusive | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 9. ××× | _____ | seep | ××× |
| 10. _____ | _____ | meditate | _____ |

【解答】

| ADJECTIVE | NOUN | VERB | ADVERB |
|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. prepon-
derant | (prepon-
derance) | prepon-
derate | prepon-
derantly |
| 2. derisive | derision | (deride) | deridingly |
| 3. redemptive | redemption | (redeem) | ××× |
| 4. nauseous | (nausea) | nauseate | nauseously |
| 5. (sagacious) | sagacity | ××× | sagaciously |
| 6. balmy | (balm) | ××× | balmily |
| 7. simulative | simulation | (simulate) | simulatively |
| 8. (effusive) | effusion | effuse | effusively |
| 9. ××× | seepage | (seep) | ××× |
| 10. meditative | meditation | (meditate) | meditatively |

Exercise 11. 6 将题前的斜体词转换为适当的词性，填入空格内：

1. *endorse* You have to sign your _____ on the back of a check, in evidence of its transfer or assuring its payment.
2. *oblivious* Drug addicts like to use narcotic because it causes complete _____ of all sorrows.
3. *suave* Before I asked her name, she introduced herself with perfect _____.
4. *symmetry* Notice the _____ looks of the human body; the right side is the counterpart of the left.
5. *drape* The gay colors of the _____ made the living room bright and cheery.
6. *vigilance* While she was out, the faithful dog kept _____ guard over the baby.
7. *frugal* Riches are achieved with industry and kept by _____.
8. *apathy* The lazy boy's _____ attitude toward school-work annoyed both his teacher and his parents.
9. *tumult* I couldn't hear what she said because of the sailor's _____ voice.
10. *transcribe* The college wanted a _____ of the student's high-school record.

【解答】 1. endorsement 2. oblivion 3. suavity 4. symmetrical
 5. drapery 6. vigilant 7. frugality 8. apathetic
 9. tumultuous 10. transcript

Exercise 11.7 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词：

【解答】 1. B 2. D 3. A 4. D 5. A 6. C 7. B 8. D 9. B 10. C

Exercise 11.8 从下列生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：

VOCABULARY LIST

| | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| collided | aggravate | insolvent | meditate |
| symmetry | imminent | culmination | hygiene |
| endorse | seeped | annexed | redeemed |

1. He had to _____ the check before the bank would cash it.
 2. Water had _____ into the house through the walls and roof.
 3. The property on which the money was lent was _____ when the loan was paid back.

4. The black clouds, thunder, and lightning show that a storm is _____.
5. Telling a lie in the court will only _____ your guilt.
6. The Hawaiian Islands were _____ to the United States by act of Congress, July 7, 1898.
7. The _____ of the Christmas party was the appearance of Santa Claus.
8. The terrible earthquake killed thousands of people in the city, and it led me to _____ on the weakness of human beings.
9. The bump on the left side of her forehead spoiled the _____ of her face.
10. Two large ships _____ in the harbor and both sank.

【解答】 1. endorse 2. seeped 3. redeemed 4. imminent
5. aggravate 6. annexed 7. culmination 8. meditate
9. symmetry 10. collided

本书由台湾学习出版公司
授权海南(三环)出版社在
大陆出版,翻印必究。

LESSON 12

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. A (An) _____ surgeon works with *dexterity*.
(A) good (B) unskilled

2. In _____ weather the air is very *humid*.
(A) windy (B) rainy

3. The little girl was in *ecstasy* over _____.
(A) the pitiful beggar
(B) her new puppy

4. Work is *repugnant* to _____ people.
(A) lazy (B) diligent

5. The doctor said that _____ would suffice the _____.
(A) smoking or drinking
(B) two meals a day

1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. B

I. A 2. B 3. B

《第一部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|---|
| accelerate
[æk'seləreit] | cause to move faster; speed up | The engineer <i>accelerates</i> a train by turning on more power. |
| v. 加速进行 | | 火车司机启动更多的动力,使火车加速运行。 |
| <i>n. acceleration</i> | | |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|--|
| averse (ə've:s)
<i>adj.</i> 反对的；
不愿的
<i>n.</i> aversion | turned away in mind or feeling; having a strong dislike; opposed. | I will keep it secret; I feel <i>averse</i> to telling it to someone.
我会保密的,不愿告诉任何人。 |
| corroborate
(kə'rəbəreit)
<i>v.</i> 确证
<i>adj.</i> corroborative | make more certain; give support or certainty to; confirm | Two persons who saw the road accident <i>corroborated</i> the driver's statement.
两个目睹车祸的人证实了驾驶员的陈述。 |
| encamp
(in'kæmp)
<i>v.</i> 扎营
<i>n.</i> encampment | make camp; settle in tents | It took the soldiers only half an hour to <i>encamp</i> in the heavy rain. 士兵们在大雨中扎营只花了半小时。 |
| humid ('hju:mɪd)
<i>adj.</i> 潮湿
<i>n.</i> humidity | slightly wet; moist; damp | The air is very <i>humid</i> near the sea or large lake. 靠近海或大湖的地方,空气非常潮湿。 |
| irrigation
(ɪri'geɪʃən)
<i>n.</i> 灌溉
<i>adj.</i> irrigational | the act of supplying water | It is impossible to make plants grow in a desert without <i>irrigation</i> . 未经灌溉,植物在沙漠中不可能生长。 |
| preeminent
(pri(:)emɪnənt)
<i>adj.</i> 卓越的
<i>n.</i> preeminence | standing out above all others; superior to others, outstanding | Every baseball player envies him; he is <i>preeminent</i> above all his rivals for pitching.
每个棒球球员都羡慕地,因为在投球方面,他胜过任何竞争者。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| rudiment
[rʊdɪmənt]
<i>n.</i> 初步
<i>adj.</i> rudimentary | the first steps or stages; a part to be learned first; beginning | Everyone learns the <i>rudiments</i> of arithmetic in elementary school.
每人在小学都学初级算术。 |
| stifle
[staɪfl]
<i>v.</i> 使窒息
<i>adj.</i> stifling | stop the breath of; cause difficulty in breathing; smother | When they got in the boiler room they were almost <i>stifled</i> by the heat. 进入汽锅室时,他们几乎热得透不过气来。 |
| versatile
[və:sətɔ:l]
<i>adj.</i> 多才多艺的
<i>n.</i> versatility | able to do many things well; having many kinds of skill | He is a very <i>versatile</i> performer; he can act, sing, dance, and play the piano.
他是个非常多才多艺的表演者,他会演戏、唱歌、跳舞,还会弹钢琴。 |

Exercise 12.1 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- _____ is needed to make crops grow in dry regions.
- It is almost impossible to learn multiplication without knowing the _____ of addition.
- Witnesses _____ her statement that there were two men in the room around that time.
- Theodore Roosevelt was a (an) _____ man; he was successful as a statesman, soldier, sportsman, explorer, and author.
- The black smoke filled the building and almost _____ the firemen in it.

【解答】 1. Irrigation 2. rudiments 3. corroborated 4. versatile
5. stifled

《第二部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|---|
| anatomy
[ə'nætəmi]
<i>n.</i> 身体结构
<i>adj.</i> anatomical | the structure of animals and plants; structure | The <i>anatomy</i> of an earthworm is much simpler than that of a man. 和人比较起来,蚯蚓的身体结构要简单的多了。 |
| brawn [braʊn]
<i>n.</i> 肌肉(尤指强壮的肌肉)
<i>adj.</i> brawny | muscular strength; muscle | Football requires brain as well as <i>brawn</i> . 踢足球需要智力及体力。 |
| dexterity
[desk'teriti]
<i>n.</i> 灵巧;机敏
<i>adj.</i> dexterous | skill in using the hands | <i>Dexterity</i> in questioning the witnesses helped the lawyer win many cases. 这位律师擅长于询问目击者,这帮助他赢了许多案子。 |
| erupt
[ɪ'rʌpt]
<i>n.</i> 爆发
<i>n.</i> eruption | explode and pour out of fire; burst forth | Mount Vesuvius hasn't <i>erupted</i> for a good many years. 维苏威火山已有许多年没有爆发了。 |
| hypothesis
[haɪ'pɒθɪsɪs]
<i>n.</i> 假说
<i>adj.</i> hypothetical | an idea of suggestion put forward as a starting point for reasoning | Let's discuss this topic on the <i>hypothesis</i> that it is true. 我们假定它是真的,来讨论这主题。 |
| manipulate
[mə'nipjuleɪt]
<i>v.</i> 操纵
<i>n.</i> manipulation | handle or control with skill | To drive an automobile, you must learn how to <i>manipulated</i> the steering wheel and pedals. 要想驾驶汽车,你必须学习如何操纵方向盘及踏板。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|---|
| prowess
[prə'wɛs]
<i>n.</i> 英勇
<i>adj.</i> prowessful | great personal bravery; daring | The tribesmen sang a song of victory, describing their <i>prowess</i> in battle. 族人唱着胜利之歌，歌颂他们在战场上的英勇。 |
| scrupulous
['skru:pjulos]
<i>adj.</i> 1. 正直的
<i>n.</i> scrupulosity | 1. very careful to do what is right; conscientious

2.谨慎小心的
2. attending thoroughly to details; very cautious. | A less <i>scrupulous</i> man wouldn't give the money back to its owner. 稍不正直的人就不会将钱送还给失主。

The nurse treated the wounded soldiers with the most <i>scrupulous</i> care. 护士无微不至地照顾受伤的士兵。 |
| suffice
[sə'fais]
<i>v.</i> 足够
<i>n.</i> sufficiency | meet the desires, need, or requirement; satisfy. | One hundred dollars a month will <i>suffice</i> for the old lady's need.

一个月一百元足够那老妇人花用。 |

Exercise 12.2 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. His new _____ gives a possible reason for the existence of life on the moon.
2. Mother told me that fifty dollars would _____ for my summer travel, but as it turned out, it was not enough.
3. His _____ and skill as a footballer makes it certain that he'll be chosen for the team.
4. A clever politician knows how to _____ his supporters.
5. Steve is _____ about returning books to the library on time; he has never paid a late fine.

【解答】 1. hypothesis 2. suffice 3. prowess 4. manipulate
5. scrupulous

《第三部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| antique
(æn'ti:k)
<i>adj.</i> 古代的
<i>n.</i> antiquity | of a time long past; out of date; old-fashioned | He really likes <i>antique</i> art much more than modern art.
他的确喜爱古典艺术远超过现代艺术。 |
| coherent
(kou'hieərənt)
<i>adj.</i> 连贯的
<i>n.</i> coherence | being naturally or reasonably connected; consistent; sticking together | In <i>coherent</i> writing, every sentence is connected in thought to the previous sentence.
在连贯的写作中,每一个句子思想上都要和前面的句子相连。 |
| doze
(douz)
<i>v.</i> 小睡
<i>adj.</i> dozy | sleep lightly; be half asleep | After dinner my father often <i>dozes</i> in his chair for a while.
晚饭后,我的父亲常在他的椅子上小睡片刻。 |
| fascinate
('fæsineit)
<i>v.</i> 使迷惑
<i>n.</i> fascination | attract very strongly; enchant by charming qualities | The actress's beauty and cleverness <i>fascinated</i> everyone in the room. 那女演员的美与聪明迷住了房间内的每一个人。 |
| innovate
('inou'veit)
<i>v.</i> 革新
<i>n.</i> innovation | make change; bring in something new | Some people like to <i>innovate</i> the old systems and traditions; others like to preserve them.
有些人喜欢改革旧有的制度及传统,有些人却喜欢保留他们。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| mystify
('mistifai)
<i>v.</i> 使困惑
<i>n.</i> mystification | bewilder pur-
posely; perplex;
puzzle to make
mysterious | The magician's tricks <i>mystified</i>
the audience in the theater.
那位魔术师的把戏使剧院里的观众
困惑。 |
| recur
('ri'ke:)
<i>v.</i> 再发生
<i>n.</i> recurrence | come up again;
occur again; be
repeated | Leap year <i>recurs</i> every four
years, and in that year February
has 29 days. 每四年闰年一次,而
那一年中,二月有二十九天。 |
| shimmer
('simə)
<i>v.</i> 发闪烁之光
<i>n.</i> shimmery | shine with a soft
trembling light;
gleam faintly | The sky was clear, and moon-
light was <i>shimmering</i> on the
lake. 天空中没有一片云,而月光照
在湖面上,闪闪发光。 |
| technicality
('tekni'kæliti)
<i>n.</i> 专门的事项
<i>v.</i> technicalize | a technical mat-
ter, term, or ex-
pression | The general explained the mili-
tary <i>technicalities</i> of the matter
to the newspaper reporters.
那将军向报社记者解释该事件军事
上专门的事项。 |

Exercise 12.3 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The children were _____ by all the marvellous toys in the shop window of the store.
2. He bought a(an) _____ chair at a high price, which had been made in 1860.
3. A(An) _____ sentence is easy to read and clear to understand.
4. The magician put an egg in an empty box, and in a few seconds a hen came out of it. I was completely _____ about what happened.
5. It is difficult to _____ when people prefer the old, familiar way of doing things.

【解答】 1. fascinated 2. antique 3. coherent 4. mystified
5. innovate

~~~~~《第四部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                                                                 | MEANING                                                  | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>articulate</b><br>[ə'tɪkjuleɪt]<br>1. <i>adj.</i> 发音清晰的<br><i>n.</i> articulation | 1. spoken in distinct syllables or words; clear          | A baby cries and gurgles but does not use <i>articulate</i> speech. 婴儿仅啼哭和咯咯作声,却无法清晰地发音。                                              |
| 2. [ə'tɪkjuːleɪt]<br><i>v.</i> 发音清晰                                                  | 2. speak distinctly; express in clear sounds or words.   | The speaker was careful to <i>articulate</i> his words so that everyone in the hall could understand him. 那说话者小心地使发音清晰,以便大厅中的每个人都能听懂。 |
| <b>confront</b><br>[kən'frənt]<br><i>v.</i> 面对<br><i>n.</i> confrontation            | meet face to face; face boldly; stand facing             | The soldiers were <i>confronted</i> by two terrorists as they left their camp. 士兵们离开营帐时,迎面来了两个恐怖分子。                                   |
| <b>ecstasy</b><br>('ekstəsi)<br><i>n.</i> 出神<br><i>v.</i> ecstasize                  | a condition of very great joy; rapture                   | While she was waiting for her boy friend in the tea room, a sweet melody filled her with <i>ecstasy</i> . 她正在茶室里等男朋友时,一阵美妙的旋律使她出神入迷。  |
| <b>foster</b><br>('foste)<br><i>v.</i> 助长<br><i>n.</i> fosterage                     | help the growth or development of; promote; help to grow | The mother tried to <i>foster</i> her son's interest in music by taking him to concerts frequently. 那母亲借常带儿子去听音乐会的方式,尝试着培养他对音乐的兴趣。    |

| WORD                                                                               | MEANING                                              | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>irradiate</b><br>[ɪ'reideɪt]<br><i>v.</i> 照耀<br><i>n.</i> irradiation           | shine upon; light up; make bright; illuminate        | The hall is not dim; the four large lamps <i>irradiate</i> it.<br>厅内并不暗;有四盏灯照耀着。                                                     |
| <b>obstinate</b><br>[ˈɒbstɪnət]<br><i>adj.</i> 固执的<br><i>n.</i> obstinacy          | firmly holding to one's opinion or purpose; stubborn | The <i>obstinate</i> man would go his own way, in spite of all warning. 那固执的人不顾所有的警告依然我行我素。                                          |
| <b>repugnant</b><br>[ri'pʌgnənt]<br><i>adj.</i> 使人讨厌的<br><i>n.</i> repugnance      | disagreeable or offensive; distasteful               | Some people eat foods that are <i>repugnant</i> to others. 某些人讨厌的食物,有些人却爱吃。.                                                         |
| <b>soporific</b><br>[soupə'rifik]<br><i>adj.</i> 催眠的<br><i>adv.</i> soporiferously | causing or tending to cause sleep; drowsy            | After his <i>soporific</i> speech for an hour, the speaker received no applause from the audience.<br>在那催眠般的一小时演讲后,演说者没有得到任何来自听众的掌声。 |
| <b>triumph</b><br>['traɪəmf]<br><i>n.</i> 大成功<br><i>adj.</i> triumphant            | a notable success or achievement; great victory      | The conquest of outer space is one of the greatest <i>triumphs</i> of modern science. 外层空间的征服是现代科学最伟大的成就之一。                          |

**Exercise 12. 4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. we \_\_\_\_\_ the little girl while her mother was in hospital.
2. John was a really \_\_\_\_\_ man; we tried to get him to change his mind, but in vain.
3. The little band of settlers, with rifles in their hands, \_\_\_\_\_ the bandits.

4. The general achieved a glorious \_\_\_\_\_ over the enemy in the battle.
5. A (An) \_\_\_\_\_ sermon can not get the audience to pay attention to the speaker; it merely makes the listeners fall asleep.

**【解答】** 1. fostered 2. obstinate 3. confronted 4. triumph  
5. soporific

### 成 果 测 验

**Exercise 12.5** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当的词性，填入空格内：

1. *doze*      Most people feel unwilling to work in a \_\_\_\_\_ summer afternoon.
2. *dexterity*      A successful manager should be \_\_\_\_\_ in handling people as well as managing money.
3. *antique*      That vase is of such great \_\_\_\_\_ that nobody knows how old it is.
4. *brawn*      The muscles of his \_\_\_\_\_ arms are as strong as iron bands.
5. *foster*      The chairman stood at the head of \_\_\_\_\_ of community development.
6. *recur*      More care in the future will prevent \_\_\_\_\_ of the same mistake.
7. *suffice*      The ship had a \_\_\_\_\_ of provision for a voyage of two months.
8. *articulate*      If you read slowly, your \_\_\_\_\_ will be much better.

9. *humid* On a hot, sultry day it is very difficult to work because of the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 10. *averse* She always put three spoons of sugar in her coffee; she has an \_\_\_\_\_ to the bitter taste of it.

**【解答】** 1. dozy 2. dexterous 3. antiquity 4. brawny  
 5. fosterage 6. recurrence 7. sufficiency  
 8. articulation 9. humidity 10. aversion

**Exercise 12.6** 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. the final *triumph* over the enemy.  
 (A)warning (B)victory (C)attack (D)fire
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. the *articulate* speech.  
 (A)boring (B)amusing (C)solemn (D)clear
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. an *obstinate* man.  
 (A)stubborn (B)soporific (C)repugnant (D)coherent
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. to *corroborate* his testimony.  
 (A)confirm (B)confess (C)conceal (D)conclude
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. an *antique* gown.  
 (A)beautiful (B)precious (C)old-fashioned (D)dirty

**【解答】** 1. B 2. D 3. A 4. A 5. C

**Exercise 12.7** 将各词的适当词性填入空格内：

| ADJECTIVE  | NOUN       | VERB      | ADVERB       |
|------------|------------|-----------|--------------|
| 1. _____   | ecstasy    | _____     | _____        |
| 2. ×××     | _____      | encamp    | ×××          |
| 3. _____   | _____      | cohere    | _____        |
| 4. _____   | hypothesis | _____     | _____        |
| 5. _____   | shimmer    | shimmer   | ×××          |
| 6. _____   | _____      | recur     | _____        |
| 7. antique | _____      | _____     | ×××          |
| 8. _____   | _____      | fascinate | _____        |
| 9. _____   | _____      | _____     | sufficiently |
| 10. _____  | _____      | erupt     | _____        |

**【解答】**

| ADJECTIVE       | NOUN         | VERB        | ADVERB         |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. ecstatic     | (ecstasy)    | ecstasize   | ecstatically   |
| 2. ×××          | encampment   | (encamp)    | ×××            |
| 3. coherent     | coherence    | (cohere)    | coherently     |
| 4. hypothetical | (hypothesis) | hypothesize | hypothetically |
| 5. shimmery     | (shimmer)    | (shimmer)   | ×××            |
| 6. recurrent    | recurrence   | (recur)     | recurrently    |
| 7. (antique)    | antiquity    | antiquate   | ×××            |
| 8. fascinating  | fascination  | (fascinate) | fascinatingly  |
| 9. sufficient   | sufficiency  | suffice     | (sufficiently) |
| 10. eruptive    | eruption     | (erupt)     | eruptively     |

*Exercise 12.8* 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：

### VOCABULARY LIST

|            |            |        |             |
|------------|------------|--------|-------------|
| coherent   | irradiated | recur  | prowess     |
| accelerate | erupt      | averse | manipulated |
| confronted | hypothesis | foster | ecstasy     |

1. He likes to talk about political problems among his friends, but was \_\_\_\_\_ to discussing politics in public.
2. The clerk stole money from the firm and \_\_\_\_\_ the accounts to conceal his theft.
3. Sunshine, fresh air, and rest often \_\_\_\_\_ a person's recovery from sickness.
4. The driver was so upset that he could not give a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ account of the accident.
5. We hope his illness will not \_\_\_\_\_; no longer can he afford to pay his medical expenses.
6. Films and pictures about recent wars sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ angry memories and feelings of hatred between nations.
7. Mystics, religious prophets, and poets have been known to go into \_\_\_\_\_ when meditating or seeking inspiration.
8. The volcano suddenly began to \_\_\_\_\_ lava and ashes, and the inhabitants took refuge to a safe place.
9. When Columbus first presented his \_\_\_\_\_ that the earth is round, very few believed it.
10. Two firemen showed great \_\_\_\_\_ by repeatedly rushing into the burning to save many lives.

【解答】 1. averse 2. manipulated 3. accelerate 4. coherent 5. recur  
6. foster 7. ecstasy 8. erupt 9. hypothesis 10. prowess

## LESSON 13

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. It takes years of hard work to *compile* \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) a good dictionary                           (B) a foreign language
2. The early \_\_\_\_\_. lives were full of *tribulations*.  
 (A) Christians'                                   (B) emperors'
3. The soldier was \_\_\_\_\_ for *valor* in battle.  
 (A) heavily punished                           (B) given a medal
4. The coach's *autocratic* manner made him \_\_\_\_\_ among the players of the team.  
 (A) popular                                       (B) unpopular
5. She was greatly *encumbered* on the trip by \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) the big radio                               (B) a good companion

△解 答 △

1. A 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A

(第一部分)

| WORD                                                        | MEANING                                          | TYPICAL USE                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>abound</b><br>(ə'baund)<br>v. 富于<br><i>adj.</i> abundant | be plentiful or numerous; exist in large numbers | Our nation <i>abounds</i> in opportunities for well-educated young men and women. 国内受过良好教育的青年拥有许多机会。 |

| WORD                                                                          | MEANING                                                | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>arrogant</b><br>[ærəgənt]<br><i>adj.</i> 傲慢的<br><i>n.</i> arrogance        | in a proud, superior manner; showing too much pride    | He behaved in such <i>arrogant</i> manners in his firm that he was at last fired. 他在公司里的行为如此傲慢,以致终于被解雇了。                          |
| <b>compile</b><br>[kəm'paɪl]<br><i>v.</i> 编纂<br><i>n.</i> compilation         | make or form a book or a list out of various materials | It takes a long time as well as many experts working together to <i>compile</i> an encyclopedia. 编一本百科全书,不仅要花一段长时间,还要有许多专家一起工作才行。 |
| <b>entreat</b><br>[ɪn'tri:t]<br><i>v.</i> 恳求<br><i>n.</i> entreaty            | keep asking earnestly; beg and pray; implore           | The murderer <i>entreated</i> the judge to show mercy, but was sentenced to death. 那杀人犯恳求法官怜悯,但还是被判了死刑。                           |
| <b>filth</b> [fɪlθ]<br><i>n.</i> 污物<br><i>adj.</i> filthy                     | foul, disgusting dirt; obscenity                       | The alley was filled with lots of garbage and other <i>filth</i> . 这条巷子遍地是大堆的垃圾及其它污物。                                             |
| <b>incumbent</b><br>[ɪn'kʌmbənt]<br><i>adj.</i> 负有义务的<br><i>n.</i> incumbency | resting as a duty; being the moral duty of (someone)   | It is <i>incumbent</i> on you to give a father's advice before your son leaves home. 在儿子离家前给他一点忠告,是作父亲应尽的义务。                      |
| <b>monotony</b><br>[mə'nətəni]<br><i>n.</i> 单调<br><i>adj.</i><br>monotonous   | sameness of tone or pitch; lack of variety             | At sea, everything that breaks the <i>monotony</i> of the surrounding expanse attracts attention.<br>在茫茫的海上,每件打破单调的事物都能吸引注意。      |

| WORD                                                                            | MEANING                                       | TYPICAL USE                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>reciprocate</b><br>[ri'siprəkeɪt]<br><i>v.</i> 回报<br><i>n.</i> reciprocation | give in return; give and receive              | I hope I can <i>reciprocate</i> your hospitality some time.<br>我希望下次能回报你的殷勤招待。                        |
| <b>shaggy</b> [ʃægi]<br><i>adj.</i> 多粗毛的<br><i>n.</i> shagginess                | covered with a mass of hair or wool           | The <i>shaggy</i> dog always sleeps in the bed with her. 那只长毛狗总是和她一起睡在床上。                             |
| <b>tribulation</b><br>[tribju'leɪʃn]<br><i>n.</i> 苦难<br><i>v.</i> tribulate     | great trouble or misery; hardship; affliction | Hunger, cold, and sickness were among the <i>tribulations</i> of pioneer life. 饥饿、寒冷、病痛是开拓者生活中苦难的一部分。 |

**Exercise 13. 1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

- She invited me to her birthday party, and I \_\_\_\_\_ by wishing her a happy Christmas.
- The blue whale once \_\_\_\_\_ in the Antarctic, but is becoming more and more scarce.
- She \_\_\_\_\_ her father to send her to the United States for further study.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ enough information on his tour of South Africa to write a book.
- It is \_\_\_\_\_ upon you to warn the boy of the harm of smoking.

**【解答】** 1. reciprocated 2. abounded 3. entreated 4. compiled  
5. incumbent

## (第二部分)

| WORD                                                                             | MEANING                                                                 | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>adolescent</b><br>(,ædə'lesnt)<br>1. <i>adj.</i> 青年的<br><i>n.</i> adolescence | 1. growing up from childhood to adulthood<br>2. <i>n.</i> 青年            | He read many books in the <i>adolescent</i> stage of his life.<br>他在他的青年时代读了不少书。                                                |
|                                                                                  | 2. a person growing up from childhood to manhood or womanhood           | One who is 15 years old is not an adult, but an <i>adolescent</i> .<br>十五岁的人不能算是成人，不过是<br>个青年。                                  |
| <b>autocratic</b><br>(,ɔ:tə'krætik)<br><i>adj.</i> 独裁的<br><i>n.</i> autocracy    | of or like an autocrat; having absolute power or authority; dictatorial | Adolf Hitler commanded <i>autocratic</i> power; no one could rigorously oppose his plans or decisions. 希特勒独裁，没有人能够强硬地反对他的计划或决定。 |
| <b>congenial</b><br>(kən'dʒi:njəl)<br><i>adj.</i> 适合的<br><i>n.</i> congeniality  | having similar tastes and interests; agreeable                          | All the furniture of the room was very <i>congenial</i> to my taste.<br>房内所有的家具都非常合于我的爱<br>好。                                   |
| <b>encumber</b><br>(in'kʌmbə)<br><i>v.</i> 堆满<br><i>n.</i> encumbrance           | make free action or movement difficult; hinder; obstruct; hamper        | The room was <i>encumbered</i> with heavy furniture.<br>房内堆满了笨重的家具。                                                             |
| <b>horrify</b><br>('hɔrifai)<br><i>v.</i> 吓<br><i>n.</i> horror                  | cause to feel horror; shock very much                                   | Every night the little girl was <i>horrified</i> by the tiger's cry.<br>每晚这个小女孩都被老虎的怒吼声<br>吓倒。                                  |

| WORD                                                                         | MEANING                                                          | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>manifest</b><br>('mænɪfəst)<br><i>adj.</i> 明白的<br><i>n.</i> manifestation | apparent to be seen by eye or to the mind; obvious; evident.     | It is now <i>manifest</i> that, if you don't return the book to the library right now, you will have to pay a late fine. 现在情况已很明白, 如果你不立刻把书送回图书馆, 你将必须付逾时不还书的罚金。 |
| <b>nutrition</b><br>(nju(:)trɪʃən)<br><i>n.</i> 营养<br><i>adj.</i> nutritious | the action of providing or state of being provided with food     | Good health is not always obtained by good <i>nutrition</i> . 健康未必靠好的营养就能得到。                                                                                     |
| <b>repress</b><br>(ri'pres)<br><i>v.</i> 镇压<br><i>n.</i> repression          | keep down; hold back; prevent from acting; suppress              | They could <i>repress</i> the uprising with the help of the army. 依靠军队的帮助, 他们能够镇压民众的暴动。                                                                          |
| <b>smuggle</b><br>('smʌgl)<br><i>v.</i> 走私<br><i>n.</i> smuggler             | bring into or take out of a country secretly and against the law | The were accused of <i>smuggling</i> diamonds from foreign countries. 他们因自国外走私宝石而被告发。                                                                            |
| <b>tangible</b><br>('tændʒəbl)<br><i>adj.</i> 确实的<br><i>n.</i> tangibility   | can be touched or felt by touch; physical; material              | There has been a <i>tangible</i> improvement in his school work. 他的功课确实有进步。                                                                                      |

**Exercise 13. 2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

- I enjoyed the party last night; the \_\_\_\_\_ atmosphere of the party pleased me.
- Milk, meat, fruits, and vegetables provide good \_\_\_\_\_.

3. It is a crime to \_\_\_\_\_ jewelry into Korea.
4. They are \_\_\_\_\_ by their parents, who prevent them from playing or shouting.
5. Rubbish and old boxes on the passage \_\_\_\_\_ the fire escape.

**【解答】** 1. congenial 2. nutrition 3. smuggle 4. repressed  
5. encumbered

~~~~~**(第三部分)**~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|---|
| analogy
(ə'nælədʒi)
<i>n.</i> 相似之处
<i>adj.</i> analogous | a degree of likeness or sameness; likeness in some ways between things | The teacher drew an <i>analogy</i> between the human heart and a pump.
老师提出心脏和汽筒的类似之处。 |
| billow ('bilou)
<i>n.</i> 巨浪
<i>adj.</i> billowy | a very large wave of water | The ship was tossed by the ocean <i>billows</i> in the storm. 暴风雨中, 这艘船为海上的巨浪所摇荡。 |
| detonate
('detounēit)
<i>v.</i> 使爆裂
<i>n.</i> detonation | (cause to) explode suddenly with a loud noise | The bomb was <i>detonated</i> from several miles away; it caused no damage to our town. 那炸弹在几里外爆炸了, 对我们的城镇并未构成伤害。 |
| entangle
(in'tænggl)
<i>v.</i> 与…纠缠
<i>n.</i> entanglement | get twisted up and caught; tangle | The fly became <i>entangled</i> in the spider's web.
这只苍蝇与蜘蛛的网纠缠在一起。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|---|
| hibernate
[haibə'neɪt]
<i>v.</i> 冬眠
<i>n.</i> hibernation | pass the winter in a state like sleep; spend the winter | During long severe winters some animals, such as badgers, ground squirrels, and some insects, <i>hibernate</i> .
在漫长寒冬中,有些动物,例如獾、地鼠和一些昆虫会冬眠。 |
| intuition
[intju(:)ɪʃən]
<i>n.</i> 直觉
<i>adj.</i> intuitive | the immediate perception or understanding of truths or facts without reasoning | By experience with all kinds of people the doctor has developed great powers of <i>intuition</i> .
根据经验医师对于各行各业的人都显示出很强的直觉力。 |
| pollute
[pə'lju:t]
<i>v.</i> 污染
<i>n.</i> pollution | make impure, foul, or dirty; destroy the purity of; contaminate | Many rivers in Taiwan are <i>polluted</i> with filthy waste from factories.
台湾的许多河川被工厂所排污秽的废物所污染。 |
| revere
[ri'ver] <i>v.</i> 尊敬
<i>n.</i> reverence | give great respect and admiration to; respect deeply | She <i>reveres</i> her grandfather; he is strict in decision, but shows great affection to her.
她尊敬她的祖父,他在作决定时虽严厉,但却深爱着她。 |
| solitary
['solitəri]
<i>adj.</i> 单一的
<i>n.</i> solitude | alone or single; without companions; lonely | The hermit led a <i>solitary</i> life in the deep mountains far away from the town. 那位隐士在远离市镇的深山中,独自生活着。 |
| valor [ˈvælə] <i>n.</i> 勇气
<i>adj.</i> valiant | courage; bravery | They owed their lives to the <i>valor</i> of the firemen. 由于消防队员们的勇敢,他们才保住生命。 |

Exercise 13.3 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The bird flew into the net, and the more it struggled the more it _____ itself.
2. The company commander showed great _____ in leading his men despite a painful wound in his leg.
3. The water along the beach was _____ by refuse from those factories.
4. In February, my parents returned from Florida where they had _____ since Christmas.
5. The students _____ the old professor; he has wisdom as well as profound knowledge in his field.

【解答】 1. entangled 2. valor 3. polluted 4. hibernated
5. revere

~~~~~《第四部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                                                           | MEANING                                            | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>antagonist</b><br>[æn'tægənist]<br><i>n.</i> 敌手<br><i>adj.</i> antagonistic | one who is opposed to another; opponent; adversary | The brave knight defeated each <i>antagonist</i> who came against him. 这个勇敢的武士把向他挑战的敌手一一击败。                                                    |
| <b>cognizant</b><br>['kɔgnɪzənt]<br><i>adj.</i> 认知的<br><i>n.</i> cognizance    | having knowledge; being fully aware of; conscious  | As the doctor was fully <i>cognizant</i> of the patient's serious condition, he acted swiftly to relieve it. 由于医师完全了解病人的严重情况, 所以他快速地采取措施以消除病痛。 |

| WORD                                                                               | MEANING                                                                        | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>doleful</b><br>(doulful)<br><i>adj.</i> 悲哀的<br><i>n.</i> dolefulness            | very sad or dreary; mournful; dismal                                           | His <i>doleful</i> expression showed that he had failed in the examination. 由他悲哀的表情可以知道他考试考坏了。                                                                                                                    |
| <b>facility</b><br>(fə'siliti)<br><i>n.</i> 1. 方便<br><i>v.</i> facilitate<br>2. 便利 | 1. the quality of being able to be done easily<br>2. an advantage; convenience | The <i>facility</i> of communication is far greater now than it was a hundred years ago.<br>今日交通比一百年前方便多了。<br>A free bus to the airport is a <i>facility</i> offered only by this hotel.<br>到机场的免费巴士是这家旅社独家提供的便利。 |
| <b>improvise</b><br>('imp्रəvaiz)<br><i>v.</i> 即席而作<br><i>n.</i> improvisation     | make up on the spur of the moment; sing or speak without preparation           | He <i>improvised</i> a new stanza for the school song at the football game.<br>他在足球赛中临时为校歌作新词。                                                                                                                    |
| <b>inquisitive</b><br>(in'kwizitiv)<br><i>adj.</i> 好奇的<br><i>n.</i> inquiry        | asking many questions; prying into other people's affairs                      | The old lady was very <i>inquisitive</i> about what her neighbors were doing. 这位老妇人对邻居所作所为非常好奇。                                                                                                                   |
| <b>protrude</b><br>(prə'tru:d)<br><i>v.</i> 突出<br><i>n.</i> protrusion             | (cause to) stick out or stretch outwards from a place; thrust forth            | The policeman stopped the man when he saw a gun <i>protruding</i> from his pocket.<br>当警察看见那人口袋中有一把枪突出时, 警察挡住了那人的去路。                                                                                              |
| <b>savor</b> ('seivə)<br><i>n.</i> 滋味<br><i>adj.</i> savory                        | a taste or smell; flavor; relish                                               | He used to say that argument adds a <i>savor</i> to conversation.<br>他一向认为争论为谈话添加情趣。                                                                                                                              |

| WORD                                                                 | MEANING                                         | TYPICAL USE                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>subvert</b><br>[sʌb'vert]<br><i>v.</i> 败坏<br><i>n.</i> subversion | overthrow; cause the downfall of; ruin; destroy | Much of the city was <i>subverted</i> by the earthquake and a great fire. 这座城市的大部分都被地震和大火所毁坏了。 |
|                                                                      |                                                 |                                                                                                |

**Exercise 13.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. A normal child is very \_\_\_\_\_ about what animals live on the moon or stars.
2. The soup had been boiled too long and lost its peculiar \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Keep your feet under your desk; do not let them \_\_\_\_\_ into the aisle.
4. The boys \_\_\_\_\_ a tent out of two blankets and a long pole.

【解答】 1. inquisitive 2. savor 3. protrude 4. improvised

### 成果测验

**Exercise 13.5** 将各词的适当词性填入空格内:

| ADJECTIVE      | NOUN     | VERB        | ADVERB |
|----------------|----------|-------------|--------|
| 1. _____       | valor    | × × ×       | _____  |
| 2. _____       | facility | _____       | _____  |
| 3. inquisitive | _____    | _____       | _____  |
| 4. _____       | _____    | reciprocate | _____  |
| 5. _____       | _____    | abound      | _____  |
| 6. _____       | _____    | revere      | _____  |
| 7. _____       | horror   | _____       | _____  |
| 8. _____       | _____    | compile     | × × ×  |
| 9. _____       | _____    | subvert     | _____  |
| 10. _____      | _____    | protrude    | _____  |

## 【解答】

| ADJECTIVE        | NOUN                      | VERB          | ADVERB        |
|------------------|---------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. valiant       | (valor)                   | × × ×         | valiantly     |
| 2. facile        | (facility)                | facilitate    | facilely      |
| 3. (inquisitive) | inquisition<br>or inquiry | inquire       | inquisitively |
| 4. reciprocal    | reciprocation             | (reciprocate) | reciprocally  |
| 5. abundant      | abundance                 | (abound)      | abundantly    |
| 6. reverent      | reverence                 | (revere)      | reverently    |
| 7. horrible      | (horror)                  | horrify       | horribly      |
| 8. compilatory   | compilation               | (compile)     | × × ×         |
| 9. subversive    | subversion                | (subvert)     | subversively  |
| 10. protrusive   | protrusion                | (protrude)    | protrusively  |

**Exercise 13. 6** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当的词性，填入空格内：

1. *nutrition*      Apples and oranges are very \_\_\_\_\_ food.
2. *savor*      The \_\_\_\_\_ smell of roasting turkey greeted us as we entered the house.
3. *solitary*      Both the prospector in the desert and the shy person in the city live in \_\_\_\_\_.
4. *analogy*      The wing of an airplan is \_\_\_\_\_ to the wing of a bird.
5. *cognizant*      The judge took \_\_\_\_\_ of the accused man's ill health in handing down the sentence.
6. *facility*      The broken lock \_\_\_\_\_ my entrance into the empty house.

7. *encumber* Shoes or long hair must be an \_\_\_\_\_ to a swimmer
8. *manifest* Entering the burning building was a \_\_\_\_\_ of his courage.
9. *reciprocate* Although I gave him many presents, I had no \_\_\_\_\_ gifts from him.
10. *entreat* The savages paid no attention to their captive's \_\_\_\_\_ for mercy.

**【解答】** 1. nutritious 2. savory 3. solitude 4. analogous  
 5. cognizance 6. facilitated 7. encumbrance  
 8. manifestation 9. reciprocal 10. entreaty

**Exercise 13.7** 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. (A)encumber (B)obstruct (C)irradiate (D)hamper
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. (A)cognizant (B)averse (C)aware (D)conscious
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. (A)pollute (B)restrain (C)suppress (D)repress
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. (A)savor (B)relish (C)flavor (D)billow
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. (A)kindred (B)congenial (C)shaggy (D)sympathetic
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. (A)affliction (B)hardship (C)tribulation (D)nutrition
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. (A)ecstasy (B)antagonist (C)opponent (D)adversary
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. (A)obvious (B)manifest (C)obstinate (D)evident
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. (A)doleful (B)dismal (C)mournful (D)autocratic
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. (A)upset (B)smuggle (C)overthrow (D)subvert

**【解答】** 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. D 7. A 8. C 9. D 10. B

**Exercise 13.8** 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：

**VOCABULARY LIST**

|           |            |           |           |
|-----------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| filth     | detonated  | incumbent | protruded |
| congenial | analogy    | repress   | improvise |
| tangible  | adolescent | monotony  | entangled |

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ his feet in the coil of rope and fell down.
2. No one lives in the old house; it is full of \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The police need \_\_\_\_\_ proof of his guilt before they can act against him.
4. If an actor forgets his words on the stage, he has to \_\_\_\_\_ the scene.
5. He is not an adult; he is still in the \_\_\_\_\_ stage of growth.
6. He enjoyed his trip to Europe very much; some \_\_\_\_\_ companions made the trip successful.
7. It is a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ responsibility of all military officers to maintain the dignity of the uniform.
8. The saucy child \_\_\_\_\_ her tongue when her mother blamed her for her laziness.
9. When she was given a Christmas gift from her boy friend, she could not \_\_\_\_\_ her desire to open it immediately.
10. There is a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ between the way water moves in waves and the way light travels.

**【解答】** 1. entangled 2. filth 3. tangible 4. improvise  
 5. adolescent 6. congenial 7. incumbent  
 8. protruded 9. repress 10. analogy

## LESSON 14

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. The young man took the vows of *chivalry* to become a \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) scholar                    (B) knight                    (C) judge
2. *Diagnosis* is one of the most important parts of the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) doctor's work            (B) nuclear warfare  
 (C) mechanical engineering
3. It is difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ someone who is *elusive*.  
 (A) marry                    (B) teach                    (C) find
4. The woman was often *persecuted* by the man, and she \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
 (A) likes                    (B) knows                    (C) hates
5. He is so *vindictive* that he never \_\_\_\_\_ anybody.  
 (A) dislikes                  (B) forgives                  (C) despises

△ 解 答 △  
1. B 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. B

~~~~~《第一部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| addict (ə'dikt) | 1. <i>v.</i> 对…有瘾
n. addiction | 1. addition give oneself up to a habit
He is addicted to alcohol and drugs.
他离不开酒和药物。 |
| | 2. (ædikt) | Doctors and policemen disagree on how to control drug distribution and handle addicts . 医生和警察对于如何管制药量的分配及管理有药瘾者的意见并不一致。 |
| n. 沉溺于不良嗜好者 | 2. a person who is a slave to a habit | |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|---|
| assiduous
[ə'sidjuəs]
<i>adj.</i> 刻苦的
<i>n.</i> assiduity | having or showing careful and continual attention | He is <i>assiduous</i> at his studies; he works hard and steadily, and pays continual attention to his teacher. 他刻苦学习,努力工作,并时时注意老师所说的话。 |
| conspire
[kən'spaɪə]
<i>v.</i> 图谋
<i>n.</i> conspiracy | plan secretly with others to do something unlawful or wrong; plot | The two men <i>conspired</i> to steal the jewels and then sell them to a jeweler in another country. 那两个人企图盗取珠宝,然后卖给另一个国家的珠宝商。 |
| elusive
[ɪ'lju:sɪv]
<i>adj.</i> 令人困惑的
<i>n.</i> elusion | hard to catch or find; evasive; hard to understand; | He is such an <i>elusive</i> person; you never know where he is when you want him. 他就是这样一个人物,当你需要他时,你永远不知道他在何处。 |
| gaudy
['gɔ:dɪ]
<i>adj.</i> 华而不实的
<i>n.</i> gaudiness | too bright and gay to be in good taste; cheap and showy | A cheap, <i>gaudy</i> steamboat arrived at the wharf from St. Louis. 一艘来自圣路易,低廉且华而不实的汽船到达了码头。 |
| ignite
[ɪg'nait]
<i>v.</i> 使燃烧
<i>n.</i> ignition | set on fire; cause to start to burn; kindle | He <i>ignited</i> the march by scratching it on the desk. 他将火柴在桌上一擦,便点着了火柴。 |
| negotiate
[ni'gəʊʃeɪt]
<i>v.</i> 商订
<i>n.</i> negotiation | talk with another person to settle disagreement; arrange by discussion | The trade union is <i>negotiating</i> with the employers to get a better contract. 工会正与雇主商订一较好的合约。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|---|
| respiration
[rɛspə'reifən]
<i>n.</i> 呼吸
<i>adj.</i> respiratory | the act of inhaling and exhaling; breathing | Respiration is difficult at great heights and some mountaineers wear oxygen masks to overcome such difficulty. 在很高的地方呼吸是困难的，有些登山者配戴氧气面罩来克服这困难。 |
| spice [spaɪs]
<i>n.</i> 趣味；调料
<i>n.</i> spicery | a vegetable substance used to flavor foods | The speaker made a few funny jokes to add spice to his speech. 这演说者开了一些有趣的玩笑，以便为演说添加些趣味。 |
| unanimous
[ju(:)na'niməs]
<i>adj.</i> 全体一致的
<i>n.</i> unanimity | in complete accord or agreement; mutually agreed; with no opposition | The proposal was accepted with unanimous approval by the committee. 这个建议是经委员会全体一致赞同而采用的。 |

Exercise 14. 1 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

- She would be attractive if she did not wear such _____ jewelry.
- The children were _____ in their wish to go to the beach in summer.
- The government has to _____ with opposition party on the new law.
- The criminals had _____ to rob the First National Bank, but their plot was detected in advance of their action.
- A drug _____ first it almost impossible to stop using drugs.

【解答】 1. gaudy 2. unanimous 3. negotiate 4. conspired 5. addict

(第二部分)

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|---|
| aggregate
(ə'gri:gət)
<i>v.</i> 1. 集合
<i>n.</i> aggregation | 1. cause to come together into a group or mass
2.合计 | The power of the allies <i>aggregated</i> together was great, though individually some were quite weak. 尽管个体的力量相当微弱,只要团结起来,便可汇成一股强大的力量。
His various wages for the year <i>aggregated</i> \$22,000. 一年内,他的各种工资总计有两万两千元。 |
| banal
(bə'næl)
<i>adj.</i> 琐屑的
<i>n.</i> banality | not new or interesting ; very common ; trite | Their conversation was <i>banal</i> , full of uninteresting remarks, such as "nice weather" and "slow traffic today." 他们谈话的内容琐碎,都是些乏味之词,例如“天气好”和“今天交通缓慢”。 |
| curative
('kjuerətiv)
<i>adj.</i> 有疗效的
<i>n.</i> curativeness | having the power to cure ; tending to cure ; remedial | Taking a rest in the mountains is very <i>curative</i> for breathing difficulties. 在山上休息对治疗呼吸困难非常有功效。 |
| enforce
(in'fɔ:s)
<i>v.</i> 迫使
<i>n.</i> enforcement | urge with force ; cause to be carried out ; compel | The robbers <i>enforced</i> obedience to their demand by threat of violence. 匪徒以暴力威胁使受害者服从他们的要求。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|---|
| hypocrite
('hipəkrit)
<i>n.</i> 伪君子
<i>adj.</i> hypocritical | a person who pretended to be very good or religious | No one in the village likes the man because he is a shameless hypocrite 村庄内没一个人喜欢那人, 因为他是一个无耻的伪君子。 |
| intercept
(,intə(:) 'sept)
<i>v.</i> 中途拦截
<i>n.</i> interception | stop or seize on the way from one place to another | It is illegal to intercept a letter or parcel before it is delivered.
在信件或包裹尚未送达收件人之时,中途拦截是违法的。 |
| persecute
('pə:sikju:t)
<i>v.</i> 迫害
<i>n.</i> persecution | treat badly; cause to suffer constantly; do harm to; oppress; harass | Some early religious leaders were persecuted by their enemies.
某些早期的宗教领袖被他们的敌人所迫害。 |
| sarcasm
('sa:kæzəm)
<i>n.</i> 讽刺
<i>adj.</i> sarcastic | the act of making fun of a person to hurt his feelings; harsh or bitter irony | "Don't hurry!" said her father in sarcasm as she slowly dressed.
当她慢慢地穿衣时,她的父亲讽刺地说“别急”。 |
| superfluous
(sju(:) 'pə:fluəs)
<i>adj.</i> 多余的
<i>n.</i> superfluity | more than is needed or desired; excessive; surplus | We have enough food for the picnic; any more food would be superfluous . 我们有足够的野餐食物,再多的食物将会是多余的。 |
| vindicate
('vindikeit)
<i>v.</i> 辩解
<i>n.</i> vindication | show or prove the truth and justice; exculpate | The report of the committee of inquiry completely vindicates him and declares his action to have been right and proper. 调查委员会的报告完全是在替他辩护,而且声言他的行为是正确恰当的。 |

Exercise 14.2 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. A person who says one thing and does another is called a(an) _____.
2. "How unselfish you are!" said the girl in _____ as her brother took the biggest piece of the cake.
3. The cruel boy _____ the kitten by throwing stones at it whenever it came near to him.
4. I have already stated quite clear what I think about your idea; any further comment on the subject would be _____.
5. Do not drink so much; you might take away 50 per cent from the _____ power of the medicine.

【解答】 1. hypocrite 2. sarcasm 3. persecuted 4. superfluous
5. curative

《第三部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|---|
| animate
(ə'ænimeɪt)
1. <i>v.</i> 使有生气

(ə'ænimɪt)
2. <i>adj.</i> 有生命的 | make lively; arouse to action;
inspire

having life; alive | A smile <i>animated</i> her face as she went to the gate to meet her husband. 当她到门口迎接她丈夫时,一个微笑使她的脸朝气蓬勃。

Many scientists now believe that there are some worlds in outer space having <i>animate</i> beings.
现在许多科学家相信在外层空间某些星球上有生物存在。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|---|
| chivalry
[ʃivəlri]
<i>n.</i> 骑士精神
<i>adj.</i> chivalrous | the qualities of an ideal knight; the rules or beliefs of knight | Chivalry includes bravery, loyalty, honor, courtesy, respect for woman, protection of the weak, and generosity. 骑士精神包括了勇敢, 忠贞, 荣誉感, 礼貌, 尊敬妇女, 保护弱小和慷慨。 |
| diagnosis
[daiəg'nousis]
<i>n.</i> 调查
<i>adj.</i> diagnostic | the act or process of finding out diseases; a careful study of the facts | A doctor cannot treat an illness until he has made a diagnosis .
医生未作诊断前, 不能治病。 |
| exemplify
[ig'zemplifai]
<i>v.</i> 例示
<i>n.</i> exemplification | show or illustrate by example | The teacher exemplified the use of the word for the students.
这位老师为学生们举例说明这字的用法。 |
| impend [im'pend]
<i>v.</i> 逼近
<i>adj.</i> impending | be likely to happen soon; be about to happen | When a war impends , wise men try to prevent it in advance.
战争将临时, 智者设法预先阻止它。 |
| modulate
['modjuleit]
<i>v.</i> 调整
<i>n.</i> modulation | regulate or adjust; alter the voice in pitch, tone, or volume | The speaker had a really noble voice which he could modulate with great skill.
这位演说者有副相当好的嗓子, 他能很技巧地调整它。 |
| prophecy
['prɔfisi]
<i>n.</i> 预言
<i>v.</i> prophesy | the act of telling what will happen in the future; foretelling future events | The teacher's prophecy that the boy would become a great national leader was later fulfilled.
老师曾预言这男孩将会成为一位伟大的国家领袖, 这预言后来实现了。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| sensuous
('sensjuəs)
<i>adj.</i> 感官的
<i>n.</i> sensuousness | of the senses; derived from the senses; perceived by the senses | After hard work we could feel the <i>sensuous</i> delight of a hot bath. 在辛苦的工作后, 我们能够感觉洗热水澡全身舒畅的快乐。 |
| tact
(tækt)
<i>n.</i> 机智
<i>adj.</i> tactful | the ability to say or do the right things ; skill in handling difficult situations | A minister of foreign affairs who lacks <i>tact</i> is a dangerous man. 缺乏机智的外交部长是个危险人物。 |
| vindictive
(vin'diktiv)
<i>adj.</i> 欲报复的
<i>adv.</i> vindictively | having or showing a desire for revenge; revengeful; unforgetting; spiteful | The <i>vindictive</i> little girl tore up her sister's papers. 那个充满报复心的小女孩撕破了她姐姐的作业。 |

Exercise 14. 3 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The two doctors made different _____ of my disease.
2. Our teacher is able to _____ a lecture on a dull subject with witty remarks.
3. Black clouds and the flashes of lightning are signs that a storm _____.
4. The cat stretched itself with _____ pleasure in the warm sun.
5. Some people are able to _____ their voices according to the size of the room in which they speak.

【解答】 1. diagnoses 2. animate 3. impends 4. sensuous
5. modulate

~~~~~《第四部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|---|
| append
[ə'pend]
<i>v.</i> 附加
<i>n.</i> appendix | add to a large thing; attach as a supplement | If you hand in your report late, <i>append</i> a note explaining the reason for the delay. 如果你迟交报告,附上一纸条解释理由。 |
| communal
['kɔmjuːnl]
<i>adj.</i> 公有的
<i>v.</i> communalize | of or for a community; owned jointly by all; public | The Plains Indian has a plentiful and regular supply of meat and skins by the <i>communal</i> buffalo hunting. 大草原的印第安人猎取公有的牛而常得到很多肉和皮。 |
| ecology
[i(ə)'kɒlədʒi]
<i>n.</i> 生态学
<i>adj.</i> ecological | a branch of biology that deals with the habits of living things | After learning <i>ecology</i> I could see the relation of living things to their environment and to each other. 读过生态学之后,我能了解生物和环境及生物彼此间的关系。 |
| forbear
[fɔ:bər]
<i>v.</i> 忍住
<i>n.</i> forbearance | hold back; keep from doing; refrain | He's deserved to be punished several times, but I've <i>forborne</i> from doing so. 他应受几倍于此的处罚,但我忍住了,没有那么做。 |
| indifference
[ɪn'difrəns]
<i>n.</i> 无足轻重
<i>adj.</i> indifferent | lack of interest or attention; unconcern | It was a matter of <i>indifference</i> to him whether his hands were clean or dirty. 他的手是干净的或肮脏的,对他是无足轻重的。 |
| mediocre
['mi:dioʊkə]
<i>adj.</i> 平凡的
<i>n.</i> mediocrity | of average quality; neither bad nor good; ordinary | He was a <i>mediocre</i> student; his academic records were not excellent, but not bad, either. 他是平凡的学生,成绩不优秀,也不坏。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|---|
| rehearse (ri'hə:s)
v. 1. 详述
n. rehearsal | 1. tell in detail; say over again
2. 预演 | He rehearsed the story of all his sufferings in prison. 他详述他在狱中一切遭遇的故事。
We rehearsed our parts for the school play.
我们排演学校话剧中的角色。 |
| singular
(singjuleɪ)
adj. 奇异的
n. singularity | extraordinary; unusual; queer; odd | It is unwise to make yourself so singular in your clothes.
使你自己在服饰上标新立异,是不明智的。 |
| transient
(traenziənt)
adj. 短暂的
n. transiency | passing quickly or soon; not lasting; transitory; momentary | My mood is only transient ; it will go away pretty soon.
我的情绪只是一时的,很快就会过去的。 |

Exercise 14. 4 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- I decided to _____ telling her the truth because I knew it would upset her.
- The children _____ all the happenings of the day to their parents in the evening.
- The detectives and the policemen were greatly puzzled by the _____ nature of the crime.
- The boy's _____ to his school work worried both his teacher and his parents.
- The author _____ a list of troublesome words at the end of the book.

【解答】 1. forbear 2. rehearsed 3. singular 4. indifference
5. appended

成果测验

Exercise 14.5 将各词的适当词性填入空格内：

| ADJECTIVE | NOUN | VERB | ADVERB |
|--------------|-----------|-----------|--------|
| 1. _____ | chivalry | × × × | × × × |
| 2. banal | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| 3. _____ | _____ | respire | × × × |
| 4. × × × | _____ | rehearse | × × × |
| 5. unanimous | _____ | × × × | _____ |
| 6. _____ | _____ | intercept | × × × |
| 7. _____ | _____ | elude | _____ |
| 8. × × × | _____ | forbear | × × × |
| 9. _____ | diagnosis | _____ | _____ |
| 10. mediocre | _____ | × × × | × × × |

【解答】

| ADJECTIVE | NOUN | VERB | ADVERB |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. chivalrous | (chivalry) | × × × | × × × |
| 2. (banal) | banality | banalize | banally |
| 3. respiratory | respiration | (respire) | × × × |
| 4. × × × | rehearsal | (rehearse) | × × × |
| 5. (unanimous) | unanimity | × × × | unanimously |
| 6. interceptive | interception | (intercept) | × × × |
| 7. elusive | elusion | (elude) | elusively |
| 8. × × × | forbearance | (forbear) | × × × |
| 9. diagnostic | (diagnosis) | diagnose | diagnostically |
| 10. (mediocre) | mediocrity | × × × | × × × |

Exercise 14.6 将题前的斜体词转换为适当的词性，填入空格中：

1. *conspire* The leaders of the _____ against the government were caught and punished.
2. *singular* The _____ of the woman's appearance attracted much attention in the party.
3. *persecute* Religious and political _____ drove many people to the United States.
4. *enforce* Strict _____ of the laws against speeding will reduce automobile accidents.
5. *assiduous* He plans everything with unfailing _____.
6. *indifference* The boy was so excited to see snow that he was _____ to the cold.
7. *prophecy* I wouldn't dare to try to _____ who will win the election.
8. *superfluous* I have a _____ of pencils for the exam; you may borrow one if you want.
9. *append* The history book has an _____ containing an account of what has happened since 1950.
10. *sarcasm* The teacher's _____ comment about the girl's essay made her cry.

【解答】

| | | |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. conspiracy | 2. singularity | 3. persecution |
| 4. enforcement | 5. assiduity | 6. indifferent |
| 7. prophesy | 8. superfluity | 9. appendix |
| 10. sarcastic | | |

Exercise 14.7 找出一个与斜体词意义最接近的单词：

- _____ 1. *artificial respiration*
 (A) fiber (B) flower (C) light (D) breathing
- _____ 2. *append a word list*
 (A) make (B) copy (C) submit (D) attach
- _____ 3. *a gaudy dress*
 (A) old-fashioned (B) bright and showy
 (C) very precious (D) too long
- _____ 4. *a man of singular ability*
 (A) common (B) imaginative (C) exceptional (D) creative
- _____ 5. *the mediocre student*
 (A) ordinary (B) excellent (C) arrogant (D) diligent.

【解答】

1. D 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. A

Exercise 14.8 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：

VOCABULARY LIST

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| ignites | negotiate | communal | tact |
| indifference | transient | addicted | unanimous |
| spices | prophecy | intercepted | exemplify |

1. His _____ that a war between the two countries would soon break out turned out real.
2. It rained all day in Taipei, but here we had only a(an) _____ shower for minutes.
3. You will not become _____ to smoking if you refuse cigarettes when

they are offered.

4. The town swimming pool is a(an) _____ property; every member of the community can swim in the pool freely.
5. A diligent person works very hard, but a lazy Person usually treats his work with _____.
6. She used several kinds of _____ in cooking the meat.
7. A wise politician should have a great _____ in dealing with his supporters.
8. We gained possession of the ball when John _____ a forward pass.
9. He was elected president of the committee by a(an) _____ vote.

【解答】 1. prophecy 2. transient 3. addicted 4. communal
5. indifference 6. spices 7. tact 8. intercepted
9. unanimous

LESSON 15

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. The _____ was apprehended as he tried to cross the river.
 (A) conscientious policeman
 (B) little girl (C) escaped prisoner
2. _____ diverted the audience's attention from the play.
 (A) The luxurious furniture on the stage
 (B) The actor's mature performance
 (C) The siren of the fire engine.
3. The _____ was made by excavating the side of a mountain.
 (A) road (B) dam (C) tunnel
4. If a man _____, he becomes intoxicated.
 (A) drinks too much whisky
 (B) makes a large fortune
 (C) fails in an important examination
5. Most people who live _____ are urban dwellers.
 (A) near the coast (B) in apartments (C) in jungles

1. C 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. B

《第一部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|---|
| adhere
[əd'hie]
<i>v.</i> 粘着
<i>n.</i> adherence | stick firmly to another or each other; cling; hold closely | The two surfaces <i>adhered</i> to each other, and we couldn't get them apart. 这两个表面彼此粘上了, 我们无法分开它们。 |
| audacity
[ɔ: 'dæsiti]
<i>n.</i> 大胆无耻
<i>adj.</i> audacious | too much boldness; impudence; reckless daring; boldness | He had the <i>audacity</i> to go to the party without being invited. 尽管未被邀请, 他也敢厚颜地去参加宴会。 |
| contiguity
[kəntig'ueitē]
<i>n.</i> 接近
<i>adj.</i> contiguous | the state of being very close together; nearness; proximity; adjacency | The <i>contiguity</i> of the house and the garage was a convenience in bad weather. 房屋与车房的接近在坏天气时是一项便利。 |
| enchant
[in'tʃa:nt]
<i>v.</i> 施魔法于
<i>n.</i> enchantment | use magic on; bewitch; delight greatly; charm | The witch had <i>enchanted</i> the princess so that she would sleep for a month. 这女巫对公主施了魔法, 所以公主将会沉睡一个月之久。 |
| grandeur
[grændʒə]
<i>n.</i> 伟大
<i>adj.</i> grand | great beauty, power, or size; greatness; majesty | As he watched the Niagara Falls, he thought of the <i>grandeur</i> of nature. 当他注视着尼亚加拉瀑布时, 他想到了大自然的伟大。 |
| infer
[in'fə:]
<i>v.</i> 推论出
<i>n.</i> inference | find out by reasoning; come to believe after thinking | From her story we <i>inferred</i> that they went to the United States unwillingly. 从她的故事, 我们推论出他们极不情愿地去了美国。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|--|
| numb
[nʌm]
<i>adj.</i> 失去知觉的
<i>n.</i> numbness | without ability to feel or move; unable to feel anything | I cannot write a letter; my fingers are numb with cold.
我无法写信,我的手指冻僵了。 |
| remit [ri'mit]
<i>v.</i> 1. 汇寄
<i>n.</i> remittance

2. 赦免
<i>n.</i> remission | 1. send money in payment to a person or place

2. forgive all or a portion of a debt or punishment | Please remit the amount of your bill by check. 请将你的帐单的总钱数,用支票汇寄过来。

The girl was accused of stealing a pair of shoes, but because of her young age the judge remitted the prison sentence.
那女孩被指控偷了一双鞋子,但由于她年幼,法官赦免了她的刑罚。 |
| skeptical
['skeptikal]
<i>adj.</i> 怀疑的
<i>n.</i> skepticism | unwilling to believe a claim or promise; distrustful; incredulous | His skeptical remark about the team's chances of winning made us gloomy. 他怀疑这队伍胜算的言论,使我们沮丧。 |
| urban
['ə:bən]
<i>adj.</i> 都市的
<i>v.</i> urbanize | of or having to do with cities or towns | The urban population of Taiwan has greatly increased during the last ten years. 近十年来,台湾的都市人口已大幅度地增加。 |

Exercise 15.1 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The _____ of the little girl and the policeman prevented her from being kidnapped.
2. The audience was _____ by the grace of the young dancer.
3. In the United States today, the _____ population far outnumbers the

farm population,

4. Apply the sticker on the dry surface, or it will not _____ properly.
 5. I _____ from your letter that you did not wish to see us.

【解答】 1. contiguity 2. enchanted 3. urban 4. adhere 5. inferred

~~~~~《第二部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                                                     | MEANING                                                         | TYPICAL USE                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>amputate</b><br>('æmpjuteɪt)<br><i>v.</i> 锯掉<br><i>n.</i> amputation  | remove a part of the body by cutting it off for medical reasons | This is serious; I am afraid we'll have to <b>amputate</b> his leg.<br>这事很严重,恐怕我们必须锯掉他的腿。      |
| <b>bawdy</b><br>(bɔ:di)<br><i>adj.</i> 淫秽的<br><i>n.</i> bawdry           | not decent; indecent; unchaste; lewd; obscene                   | All the people in the party were disgusted with his <b>bawdy</b> jokes.<br>所有参加宴会的人都厌恶他那淫秽的笑话。 |
| <b>deformity</b><br>(dɪ'fɔ:miti)<br><i>n.</i> 畸形<br><i>adj.</i> deformed | an abnormal shape of a body; malformation; disfigurement        | She is very attractive in spite of her slight <b>deformity</b> .<br>虽然有轻微的畸形,她仍非常吸引人。          |
| <b>excavate</b><br>('ekskə'veit)<br><i>v.</i> 挖掘<br><i>n.</i> excavation | make a hole by digging; hollow out                              | It took a long time to <b>excavate</b> the ancient city of Troy.<br>挖掘古老的特洛伊城,花了很长时<br>间。      |

| WORD                                                                          | MEANING                                                            | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>harass</b><br>[ˈhærəs]<br><i>v.</i> 侵袭<br><i>n.</i> harassment             | make worried by causing trouble; bother; vex                       | In olden times the coasts of England were frequently <b>harassed</b> by the Vikings. 古时，英国海岸常受北欧海盗的侵袭。             |
| <b>intoxicate</b><br>[ɪnˈtɔksɪkeɪt]<br><i>v.</i> 使醉<br><i>n.</i> intoxication | make drunk; excite beyond self-control                             | He does not drink at all; a little wine may <i>intoxicate</i> him.<br>他根本不喝酒，因为一点酒就能使他醉。                           |
| <b>placid</b><br>[ˈplæsɪd]<br><i>adj.</i> 平静的<br><i>n.</i> placidity          | pleasantly calm or peaceful; quiet; tranquil serene                | The <b>placid</b> lake reflected the image of the old castle.<br>那平静的湖面上映着古堡的影像。                                   |
| <b>retaliate</b><br>[riˈtælieɪt]<br><i>v.</i> 报复<br><i>adj.</i> retaliatory   | pay back a wrong or injury; return evil for evil                   | Mary kicked Susan, and Susan <b>retaliated</b> against her by biting.<br>玛丽踢了苏珊一脚，而苏珊咬了玛丽一口作为报复。                   |
| <b>stealthy</b><br>[ˈstelθi]<br><i>adj.</i> 秘密的<br><i>adv.</i> stealthily     | done in a secret manner; sly; secret; furtive                      | The cat found a bird sitting on the branch and crept with <b>stealthy</b> movements toward it. 猫发现枝头上有只鸟，便偷偷地爬向它。  |
| <b>wary</b><br>[ˈweəri]<br><i>adj.</i> 机警小心的<br><i>n.</i> wariness            | on one's guard against danger, deception, etc.; cautious; vigilant | He lied to me about my friend, and I have been very <b>wary</b> of him ever since.<br>他对我撒了个关于我朋友的谎，从那时起，我便非常提防他了。 |

**Exercise 15. 2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. Better food has reduced the number of children born with \_\_\_\_\_.
2. He has been \_\_\_\_\_ by business troubles and his nagging wife.
3. I like the small restaurant at the foot of the mountain; it has an intimate and \_\_\_\_\_ atmosphere.
4. If we insult them, they will probably \_\_\_\_\_ against us sometime.
5. The joy of victory so \_\_\_\_\_ the members of the team that they jumped and sang and behaved like crazy men.

**【解答】** 1. deformity 2. harassed 3. placid 4. retaliate  
5. intoxicated

~~~~~(第三部分)~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|--|
| annihilate
(ə'naiəleɪt)
<i>v.</i> 消灭 | destroy completely; wipe out of existance; obliterate; exterminate; abolish | Three survivors told us in detail how the regiment was <i>annihilated</i> by the enemy.
三个生还者详细地告诉了我们军团是如何被敌人消灭的。 |
| chronological
(krənə'lɔdʒɪkl)
<i>adj.</i> 按年代次序 | arranged according to the order of time | In telling a story we usually follow <i>chronological</i> order.
我们通常依照年代次序来叙述故事。 |
| <i>n.</i> chronicle | | |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|--|
| divert
(dai've:t)
<i>v.</i> 使转向
<i>n.</i> diversion | turn aside or in a different direction; turn the attention away | They are planning to <i>divert</i> the river to supply water somewhere else. 他们正计划着使这河流转向，以便别处能得到水的供给。 |
| enhance
(in'ha:ns)
<i>v.</i> 增加
<i>n.</i> enhancement | add up; make greater; heighten | The moonlight on the lake <i>enhanced</i> the beauty of the scene. 湖上的月光使得风景更美了。 |
| imprison
(im'prizn)
<i>v.</i> 禁锢
<i>n.</i> imprisonment | put in prison; keep in prison | The criminal has been <i>imprisoned</i> in a dark cell for almost 10 years. 这个罪犯被关在暗室里，几乎有十年了。 |
| malice
('mælis)
<i>n.</i> 恶意
<i>adj.</i> malicious | a wish to hurt or make suffer; active ill will; enmity; spitefulness | Do not bear <i>malice</i> toward him; he is a good man by nature. 不要对他怀有恶意，他是个性情善良的人。 |
| prosecute
(prəsikju:t)
<i>v.</i> 1. 检举
<i>n.</i> prosecution | 1. bring before a court of law | The driver was <i>prosecuted</i> for exceeding the speed limit on the express way. 那驾驶员因在高速公路上超速而被检举。 |
| | 2. 进行
2. carry out; carry on | He started an inquiry into the cause of the fire, and <i>prosecuted</i> it for several weeks. 他着手调查失火的原因，已经进行好几个星期了。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|---|
| satirical
(sə'tirikəl)
<i>adj.</i> 讽刺的
<i>v.</i> satirize | exhibiting something in a scornful light; sarcastic; sardonic | We were all amused by the <i>satirical</i> comparison of life at college and in the army.
大学和军中生活的讽刺性的比较，使我们都感到好笑。 |
| subscribe
(səb'skraib)
<i>v.</i> 1. 订购
<i>n.</i> subscription | 1. pay money for the regular delivery of a newspaper, magazine, etc.

2. give or pay a sum of money | They <i>subscribe</i> to a monthly magazine in addition to several daily newspapers.
除了几份日报之外，他们还订了一份月刊。

He <i>subscribed</i> a large amount of money to the collection for the hospital. 为了医院的募款，他捐助了一大笔钱。 |
| weird
(wiəd)
<i>adj.</i> 奇异的
<i>n.</i> weirdness | unnatural; mysterious; queer; unearthly | We heard a <i>weird</i> shriek from the darkness of the ruined castle.
我们听到一声来自黑暗中废弃城堡里的奇怪尖叫声。 |

Exercise 15. 3 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. The growth of a city often _____ the value of land close to it.
2. Bryan tripped me so that I couldn't be able to play tomorrow. He did it not as a joke but out of _____.
3. No one survived the great avalanche; it _____ the whole village.
4. The teacher gave the pupils a(n) _____ list of events which had caused the First World War.
5. A juggler or magician _____ audience's attention from one hand by making feints with the other.

【解答】 1. enhances 2. malice 3. annihilated 4. chronological
5. diverts

(第四部分)

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| apprehend
(,æpri'hend)

v. 1. 忧惧
n. apprehension | 1. look forward to with fear; expect anxiously; dread

2. 捕捉 | A guilty man <i>apprehends</i> danger in every sound.

犯了罪的人每听到一个声音就感到害怕。

The thief who had stolen the jewels was <i>apprehended</i> by the police and was put in jail.

那偷珠宝的小偷被警方捉去了,而且关入了监狱。 |
| commute
(kə'mju:t)

v. 每天往返上班
n. commutation | travel regularly to and from work | She <i>commutes</i> from Cambridge to London every day.

她每天往返于剑桥伦敦之间。 |
| emit
(i'mit)

v. 放射
n. emission | send out heat, light, or sound; discharge; exude; eject | Heat and smoke <i>emitted</i> by the fire made it difficult for the firemen to put it out;

火所放射出的热和烟,使得消防队员很难将火熄灭。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| fortify
[fɔ:tifai]
<i>v.</i> 设立防御工事
<i>n.</i> fortification | build forts on; strengthen | The soldiers <i>fortified</i> the position on the hill by building earthworks and erecting log walls.
士兵们在山上这地点大兴泥土工程及设立木墙,以设立防御工事。 |
| inflict
[in'flikt]
<i>v.</i> 使负担
<i>n.</i> infliction | give a blow; cause to suffer; impose. | The government <i>inflicted</i> excessively heavy income taxes on the people. 那个政府在人民身上征收了过重的税。 |
| mimic
['mimik]
<i>v.</i> 与…极相似
<i>n.</i> mimicry | make fun of by imitating; copy closely; imitate | She cut and painted pieces of paper that <i>mimicked</i> flowers so well that some people thought they were real.
她剪绘了些纸花,做得维妙维肖,以致于有人以为那是真的。 |
| reassure
[ri:ə'sjuə]
<i>v.</i> 使安心
<i>n.</i> reassurance | comfort and make free from fear | Her calm voice <i>reassured</i> the frightened child, and he felt much better. 她平静的声音使那吓坏了的孩子安心,而且他感到好多了。 |
| serial
['siəriəl]
<i>adj.</i> 连载的
<i>v.</i> serialize | of a series; arranged in a series; making a series | An exciting new <i>serial</i> story will begin in our next week's issue.
下周出版的期刊上,我们将开始刊出动人的新连载小说。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| tactics
(tæktiks)
<i>n.</i> 战略
<i>adj.</i> tactical | the art of organizing and using military forces in war; method to gain advantages or success | The tactics of pretending to cross the river and of making a retreat fooled the enemy.
假装渡河和撤退的 战略 愚弄了敌人。 |
| | | |

Exercise 15.4 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. Hundreds of thousands of suburban residents regularly _____ to the city.
2. He _____ his uncle's voice and gestures very cleverly.
3. The captain's confidence during the storm _____ all the passengers of the ship.
4. Place volumes one to five on the shelf in a(an) _____ order.
5. If you want to be a successful politician you must make yourself able in _____.

【解答】 1. commute 2. mimicked 3. reassured 4. serial 5. tactics

成果测验

Exercise 15.5 将各词的适当词性填入空格内：

| ADJECTIVE | NOUN | VERB | ADVERB |
|-----------|--------|-----------|--------|
| 1. × × × | _____ | mimic | × × × |
| 2. _____ | _____ | retaliate | _____ |
| 3. grand | _____ | × × × | × × × |
| 4. _____ | _____ | adhere | _____ |
| 5. _____ | satire | _____ | _____ |

| | | | |
|----------|-----------|---------|-------|
| 6. | | emit | × × × |
| 7. bawdy | | × | × × × |
| 8. × × × | | enhance | × × × |
| 9. | chronicle | | |
| 10. numb | | × | × × × |

【解答】

| | | | |
|------------------|-------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. × × × | mimicry | (mimic) | × × × |
| 2. retaliatory | retaliation | (retaliate) | retaliatorily |
| 3. (grand) | grandeur | × | × × × |
| 4. adherent | adherence | (adhere) | adherently |
| 5. satirical | (satire) | satirize | satirically |
| 6. emissive | emission | (emit) | × × × |
| 7. (bawdy) | bawdry | × | × × × |
| 8. × × × | enhancement | (enhance) | × × × |
| 9. chronological | (chronicle) | chronologize | chronologically |
| 10. (numb) | numbness | × | × × × |

Exercise 15. 6 将题前的斜体词转换为适当的词性，填入空格中：

1. *malice* I think that story is nothing more than _____ gossip.
2. *infer* He never arrives on time, and my _____ is that he feels the meetings are useless.
3. *apprehend* Her _____ about the dangers of travelling were increased by the recent accident.
4. *chrono-logical* Columbus kept a careful and detailed _____ of his voyage.

5. *enchant* In the Greek story, Circe turned men into pigs by her _____.
6. *audacity* The _____ boy went to the party without being invited.
7. *prosecute* The _____ will be stopped if the stolen money is returned.
8. *contiguity* No one wants to buy the house, even at considerably low price, because it is _____ to a cemetery.
9. *subscribe* Your _____ to the newspaper expires next week.
10. *reassure* The doctor told her that she would soon recover her health, but she didn't believe it in spite of all his _____.

【解答】 1. malicious 2. inference 3. apprehensions 4. chronicle
 5. enchantment 6. audacious 7. prosecution 8. contiguous
 9. subscription 10. reassurance

Exercise 15.7 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词:

- _____ 1. (A)abolish (B)exterminate (C)annihilate (D)deride
- _____ 2. (A)symmetry (B)contiguity (C)adjacency (D)proximity
- _____ 3. (A)harass (B)bother (C)meditate (D)vex
- _____ 4. (A)enmity (B)anatomy (C)malice (D)spitefulness
- _____ 5. (A)vigilant (B)wary (C)cautious (D)coherent
- _____ 6. (A)cling (B)stifle (C)stick (D)adhere
- _____ 7. (A)satirical (B)sarcastic (C)sardonic (D)sagacious
- _____ 8. (A)sly (B)furtive (C)arrogant (D)stealthy

- _____ 9. (A) congenial (B) serene (C) tranquil (D) placid
- _____ 10. (A) elusive (B) skeptical (C) incredulous (D) distrustful

【解答】 1. D 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. D 6. B 7. D 8. C 9. A 10. A

Exercise 15. 8 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：

VOCABULARY LIST

| | | | |
|-------------|-------------|---------------|-----------|
| inflict | prosecuting | chronological | diverted |
| inferred | adhere | amputated | audacity |
| intoxicated | tactics | apprehend | mimicking |

1. The newspapers in this file are arranged in _____ order so that everyone can easily find the issue he wants.
2. The boy made all his friends laugh by _____ the teacher's slow and solemn way of talking.
3. When coaxing failed, she changed her _____ and began to cry.
4. Be careful when you use the keen ax; it can _____ a bad wound on your leg.
5. The doctor _____ the wounded soldier's leg in order to save his life.
6. Now I see how foolish I was to _____ the outcome of the test.
I passed it easily.
7. A loud noise _____ my attention from cooking and everything was burnt.
8. A glass of whisky _____ him, and he could not drive his car.
9. Glue and paste are used to make one surface _____ to another.
10. I looked at his boots and _____ that he was a policeman.

【解答】 1. chronological 2. mimicking 3. tactics 4. inflict
5. amputated 6. apprehend 7. diverted 8. intoxicated
9. adhere 10. inferred

本书由台湾学习出版公司
授权海南(三环)出版社在
大陆出版,翻印必究。

LESSON 16

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. Barometers are used for measuring the _____ of the atmosphere.
 (A) pressure (B) humidity (C) temperature
2. She found _____ quite a chore.
 (A) smoking (B) fishing (C) housekeeping
3. Coral is often used for making _____.
 (A) powerful weapon
 (B) precious jewellery
 (C) winter coat
4. We can _____ by twining strings.
 (A) make a rope (B) pull a car (C) climb the cliff
5. Most of _____ comes from this reservoir.
 (A) the passengers of this bus
 (B) the city's drinking water
 (C) leather for making shoes.

解 答 ▲
1. A2, C3, B4, A5, B

~~~~~《第一部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                             | MEANING                                             | TYPICAL USE                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>adversity</b><br>(əd've:siti)<br><i>n. 不幸</i> | a condition un-happiness, mis-fortune, or dis-tress | He that never was acquainted with <i>adversity</i> has seen the world but on one side. 从未遭遇逆境的他只了解世界的一面。 |

| WORD                      | MEANING                                                   | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>blister</b> (ˈblɪstə)  | a little baglike place in the skin filled with water      | My new shoes have made <i>blisters</i> on my heels. 我的新鞋使我的脚后跟长了水泡。                                                      |
| <b>n.</b> 水泡              |                                                           |                                                                                                                          |
| <b>clatter</b> (ˈklætə)   | a number of rapid short knocking sounds                   | The <i>clatter</i> of metal plates was heard from the kitchen. 金属盘碟的哗啦声自厨房传出。                                            |
| <b>n.</b> 哗啦声             |                                                           |                                                                                                                          |
| <b>digital</b> (ˈdɪdʒɪtl) | having to do with, or using digits                        | Most of telephone dials use <i>digital</i> numbers. 大部分电话号码盘都使用阿拉伯数字。                                                    |
| <b>adj.</b> (阿拉伯)数字的      |                                                           |                                                                                                                          |
| <b>gash</b> (gæʃ)         | a long deep cut or wound; incision                        | He cannot work today; he got a <i>gash</i> in his hand while axing. 他今天无法工作, 因为他在使用斧头时手被切伤了。                             |
| <b>n.</b> 创伤; 切伤          |                                                           |                                                                                                                          |
| <b>impunity</b>           | freedom from punishment, injury or other bad consequences | Even militarily weak and small nations have defied U. N. decisions with <i>impunity</i> . 即使是军事力量薄弱的小国, 也可平安无事地反抗联合国的决定。 |
| (ɪm'pjū;niti)             |                                                           |                                                                                                                          |
| <b>n.</b> 免罚              |                                                           |                                                                                                                          |
| <b>manure</b>             | a substance put on the soil as fertilizer                 | Plants grow much faster and stronger when they are given <i>manure</i> . 施过肥的植物长得快多了, 也强壮多了。                             |
| (mæ'njuə)                 |                                                           |                                                                                                                          |
| <b>n.</b> 肥料              |                                                           |                                                                                                                          |
| <b>porous</b> (ˈpɔ:rəs)   | full of pores or tiny holes                               | Glass is not <i>porous</i> ; it doesn't allow liquid to pass through. 玻璃是毫无空隙的, 液体无法透过它。                                 |
| <b>adj.</b> 多孔的           |                                                           |                                                                                                                          |
| <b>shack</b> (ʃæk)        | a roughly-built hut or cabin                              | There are a lot of <i>shacks</i> in the run-down part of the town near the railroad. 这城市的落后地区, 有许多破烂的小木屋在铁路附近。           |
| <b>n.</b> 破烂小木屋           |                                                           |                                                                                                                          |

| WORD                                  | MEANING                                                         | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>span</b> [spæn]<br><i>n.</i> 全长    | a stretch between two limits; the distance between two supports | The average life <i>span</i> of people has increased considerably since the 19th century. 人类的平均寿命自十九世纪以来已经大幅度地增加了。 |
| <b>twitch</b> [twɪtʃ]<br><i>v.</i> 急拉 | pull with a sudden jerk; give a sudden quick pull               | The strong winds <i>twitched</i> the paper out of her hand. 强风吹走了她手上的纸。                                            |

**Exercise 16. 1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Sunburn has made a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ on my back.
2. The farmers spread \_\_\_\_\_ on the field to make it produce better crops.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ in the cafeteria made it hard to hear one another talk.
4. A good friend will not desert you in time of \_\_\_\_\_.
5. A(An) \_\_\_\_\_ clock shows the time by displaying it in numbers, such as 2:30, instead of by hands moving around the dial.

【解答】 1. blisters 2. manure 3. clatter 4. adversity 5. digital

## ~~~~~《第二部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                        | MEANING                                    | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>armistice</b> [ə:mɪstɪs]<br><i>n.</i> 休战 | a stop in fighting; temporary peace; truce | The French battleships were placed within the power of Nazi Germany in accordance with the <i>armistice</i> terms. 根据停战协定,法国的战舰由纳粹德国掌管。 |

| WORD                                        | MEANING                                                                                       | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>breach</b> (bri:tʃ)<br>n. 违反(法纪)         | an opening made by breaking something solid; act of breaking                                  | It would be a <i>breach</i> of duty for the guard to leave before his replacement comes. 守卫在替补者尚未未来之前便离开岗位,是不忠于职守的。                                                               |
| <b>comity</b> (kə'mitî)<br>n. 团结            | friendly, polite, and respectful behavior and manners; courtesy; civility                     | To help a new student get oriented furthers the <i>comity</i> of the school. 帮助新生适应环境能增进学校的团结。                                                                                    |
| <b>dungeon</b> (dʌndʒən)<br>n. 地牢           | a dark underground room or cell to keep prisoners in                                          | Some prisoners in the <i>dungeon</i> will be released tomorrow. 一些地牢内的犯人将于明天被释放。                                                                                                  |
| <b>gregarious</b> (grɪ'geəriəs)<br>adj. 合群的 | living in groups; fond of living with others                                                  | He is a <i>gregarious</i> man; he enjoys the companionship of a large number of friends. 他是个合群的人,喜欢和一大堆朋友在一起。                                                                     |
| <b>incur</b> (in'ke:)<br>v. 遭遇              | run into something unpleasant                                                                 | The explorers <i>incurred</i> great dangers when they tried to cross the rapids. 当那些探险者越过急流时,他们遭遇了很大的危险。                                                                          |
| <b>mole</b> (moul)<br>n. 1. 痣<br>2. 褐鼠      | 1. a spot on the skin, usually brown<br>2. a small animal that lives underground most of time | She has a small <i>mole</i> on the left side of her nose. 她鼻子左侧有一颗小痣。<br>The <i>mole</i> digs holes and passages underground and makes its home in them. 那褐鼠在地底下挖掘洞穴和通道,并且把家造于其间。 |

| WORD                                              | MEANING                                                                         | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>patent</b> [ˈpeɪtənt, ˈpætənt]<br><i>n.</i> 专利 | a government grant giving a person the sole right to make and use his invention | He has applied for a <i>patent</i> on his latest invention. 他已替他最新的发明申请了专利。                                |
| <b>sip</b> [sɪp]<br><i>v.</i> 嚼饮                  | drink little by little; drink only a little at a time                           | This coffee is very hot. Do not drink it quickly, but <i>sip</i> it. 这咖啡非常烫,不要喝得太快,只需啜饮。                   |
| <b>sulfur</b> [ˈsʌlfə]<br><i>n.</i> 硫磺            | a light-yellow nonmetallic chemical element                                     | <i>Sulfur</i> is found abundantly in volcanic regions. 火山区域发现丰富的硫磺。                                        |
| <b>upsurge</b><br>[ʌp-sə:dʒ]<br><i>n.</i> 上升      | an upward turn or trend; rise; upturn                                           | This year's <i>upsurge</i> in rice production is due to the new method of cultivation. 这一年稻米产量的上升是由于新栽培方法。 |

**Exercise 16. 2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- Strong disagreement produced a (an) \_\_\_\_\_ between the business partners.
- During the \_\_\_\_\_, they developed a plan for ending the war.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is used in making gunpowder, matches, or various kinds of medicine.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ a great many debts during his illness.
- Hundreds of prisoners are still confined in the \_\_\_\_\_.

【解答】 1. breach 2. armistice 3. Sulfur 4. incurred 5. dungeon

## ~~~~~《第三部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                                     | MEANING                                                           | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>austere</b> [ɔ:st'iə]<br><i>adj.</i> 严峻的              | severe or stern in manner or appearance                           | Grandfather was an <i>austere</i> man; he used to be silent and very strict to us. 祖父是个严峻的人，他一向沉默，而且对我们非常严格。              |
| <b>bouquet</b> [bu:kɔ:]<br>[kei, bu'kei]<br><i>n.</i> 花束 | a bunch of flowers                                                | When I was in hospital, she called on me with a <i>bouquet</i> of roses in her hand. 当我住院时，她手上捧着一束玫瑰花来探望我。                |
| <b>coral</b> [kɔ:rl]<br><i>n.</i> 珊瑚                     | a stone-like substance formed from the bones of small sea animals | In the Pacific Ocean there are many <i>coral</i> atolls that are ring-like islands. 太平洋中有许多环状的珊瑚岛屿。                       |
| <b>forum</b> [fɔ:rəm]<br><i>n.</i> 讨论会                   | the place for public discussion; public discussion                | A group of schoolmasters are holding a <i>forum</i> on new ways of teaching history. 一群老师正在开一个新的历史教学方法的讨论会。               |
| <b>gym</b> [dʒim]<br><i>n.</i> 体育馆                       | a building for physical training or indoor sports                 | On rainy days the students play games in the <i>gym</i> . 下雨天时，学生们在体育馆内玩游戏。                                               |
| <b>interject</b> [intə]<br>[i:dʒekt]<br><i>v.</i> 突然插入   | throw in between other things; insert; interpose                  | "Not like that!" he <i>interjected</i> while explaining how to take the machine into pieces. 当他解释如何把机器解体时，他突然插入一句“不是像那样”。 |

| WORD                                           | MEANING                                               | TYPICAL USE                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>mushroom</b> ('mʌʃrəm)<br><i>n.</i> 菌类植物；蘑菇 | a small fungus shaped like an umbrella; toadstool     | Some <i>mushrooms</i> are good to eat; some, such as toadstools, are poisonous. 有些菌类很好吃,然而有些便是有毒的,例如毒菌。 |
| <b>raft</b> (ra:f:t)<br><i>n.</i> 救生艇          | logs fastened together to make a floating platform    | They escaped from the wrecked ship on a <i>raft</i> . 他们驾着救生艇逃离遇难的船。                                    |
| <b>smear</b> (smiə)<br><i>vt.</i> 涂抹,弄脏        | cover or stain with anything sticky, greasy, or dirty | The children looked like Negroes; their faces were <i>smeared</i> with soot. 这些孩子看起来像黑人似的,他们的脸被油烟给弄脏了。  |
| <b>taper</b> ('teipə)<br><i>v.</i> 逐渐变细        | make gradually smaller toward one end                 | One end of a pencil is <i>tapered</i> off to a point. 铅笔的一端逐渐尖细成一尖头。                                    |
| <b>via</b> (vaiə)<br><i>perp.</i> 经由           | by way of; by means of                                | I have read this French play <i>via</i> an English translation. 我已通过英译本读过这出法国戏。                         |

**Exercise 16. 3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Every now and then the speaker \_\_\_\_\_ a joke or story to keep us interested.
2. In tropical areas \_\_\_\_\_ grows in shallow water.
3. We could find no boats around the ferry, and we had to cross the river on a(an) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The judge had a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ look on his face as he spoke to the criminal.
5. The carpenter \_\_\_\_\_ the end of the fence post with an ax.

【解答】 1. interjected 2. coral 3. raft 4. austere 5. tapered

(第四部分)

| WORD                                                  | MEANING                                              | TYPICAL USE                                                                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>barometer</b><br>(bə'rəmɪtə)<br><i>n.</i> 气压计；反应指标 | an instrument for measuring the atmospheric pressure | Newspapers are often called <i>barometers</i> of public opinion. 报纸常被称为反应舆论的指标。                         |
| <b>comply</b><br>(kəm'plai)<br><i>v.</i> 顺从           | act in agreement with a request or a command         | He <i>complied</i> with the doctor's order that should take a rest at home. 他遵从医生的规定, 在家中休息。            |
| <b>coxcomb</b><br>('kəkskoum)<br><i>n.</i> 花花公子       | a vain, empty-headed man; conceited dandy; fop       | A <i>coxcomb</i> spends too much money and time on his clothes and appearance. 花花公子在他的服饰及外表上花了太多的金钱和时间。 |
| <b>foliage</b> ('fouliidʒ)<br><i>n.</i> 叶子之集合称        | the leaves of a plant, especially growing leaves     | In summer the house next-door is hidden luxuriant <i>foliage</i> . 夏天时, 隔壁房子被繁茂的叶子所掩盖。                  |
| <b>hegira</b> ('hedʒirə)<br><i>n.</i> 离开              | the flight of Mohammed from Mecca to Medina; flight  | She made her plan for her annual summer <i>hegira</i> to the Miami beach. 她计划到迈阿密海滩去度过一年一度的暑假。          |

| WORD                                  | MEANING                                                  | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>lair</b> (leə)<br>n. 野兽的巢穴         | the den or resting place of a wild animal                | The hunters traced the foot-marks of a tiger and at last they found him in his <i>lair</i> . 猎人们循着老虎的足迹前进, 最后他们在它的巢穴中找到了它。 |
| <b>nightmare</b> ('naitmə)<br>n. 恶梦   | an unpleasant and terrible dream; dream causing fear     | The child had a terrible <i>nightmare</i> and awoke crying. 那孩子做了个恶梦, 醒来又啼哭着。                                              |
| <b>reservoir</b> ('rezəvwa;)<br>n. 水库 | a place where water is collected and stored for use      | This <i>reservoir</i> is large enough to supply water to the entire city. 这水库大得足够供给全市的用水。                                  |
| <b>sod</b> (səd)<br>n. 草皮             | a piece or layer of the ground covered with grass; turf  | He bought some <i>sod</i> to put in the bare spots of his lawn yard. 他买了些草皮种在他庭院草坪的空地上。                                    |
| <b>trash</b> (træʃ)<br>n. 垃圾          | anything of little or no worth; worthless stuff; rubbish | Rake up the <i>trash</i> in the yard and burn it. We will have some guests tonight. 收集庭院内的垃圾, 并烧掉, 今晚我们将有客人来访。             |
| <b>warehouse</b> ('weəhaus)<br>n. 仓库  | a place where goods are kept; depository; storehouse     | The furniture will stay in the <i>warehouse</i> until they pay the storage cost. 那些家具会放在仓库中, 直到他们付保管费为止。                   |

**Exercise 16. 4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. In spring these naked branches will put their graceful \_\_\_\_\_ on again.

2. The salmon makes a trip to the rivers or creeks for spawning. On the contrary the \_\_\_\_\_ of the eel is toward the sea.
3. We cut some \_\_\_\_\_ from a field and covered a bare spot in the lawn with it.
4. When the \_\_\_\_\_ indicates a rapid drop in air pressure, it means a storm is coming.
5. Some people go fishing to rivers; others go to \_\_\_\_\_ or lakes.

【解答】 1. foliage 2. hegira 3. sod 4. barometer 5. reservoirs

(第五部分)

| WORD                                              | MEANING                                               | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>belch</b> (bēltʃ)<br>n. 喷出                     | throw out gas through the mouth; eructate             | The volcano <b>belched</b> a staggering amount of fire, smoke, and ashes. 那火山喷出大量的火、烟和灰尘。                         |
| <b>chore</b> (tʃɔ:)<br>n. 困难而讨厌的工作                | a difficult or disagreeable thing to do               | It's such a <b>chore</b> to do the shopping every day. 每天购物是一件如此困难而讨厌的工作。                                         |
| <b>crimson</b><br>('krimzn)<br><i>adj.</i> 深红色的   | deep, slightly purplish color                         | When she was asked a sudden question, her face turned <b>crimson</b> in embarrassment. 当她被问到一个很突然的问题时,她的脸因困窘而变红了。 |
| <b>fugitive</b><br>('fju:dʒitiv)<br><i>n.</i> 逃亡者 | a person escaping from the law; the police, or danger | The <b>fugitive</b> had already packed and bought his ticket. 这逃亡者早就打好包,买了票。                                      |

| WORD                                              | MEANING                                                         | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>horde</b> (hɔ:d)<br><i>n. 群众；大群</i>            | a large number or crowd; swarm; multitude                       | Two women were quarrelling on the street, surrounded by a <i>horde</i> of people. 有两个妇人在街上争吵，被一大群人围住。                                             |
| <b>linguist</b><br>('lingwɪst)<br><i>n. 语言学家</i>  | a person who studies the science of language                    | Usually a <i>linguist</i> is skilled in a number of languages besides his own. 除了母语外，语言学家一般通晓许多种语言。                                               |
| <b>petroleum</b><br>(pi'trəʊljəm)<br><i>n. 石油</i> | a natural oil found in the earth in certain parts of the world. | The price of the <i>petroleum</i> has been raised too high during the last few years. 最近几年来，石油的价格已经被提高太多了。                                        |
| <b>rumple</b> ('rʌmpl)<br><i>v. 使皱，起皱</i>         | crumple; crush; wrinkle                                         | Mary <i>rumpled</i> her dress by sitting on the floor. 玛丽坐在地板上，因而把衣服弄皱了。                                                                          |
| <b>sneeze</b> (snī:z)<br><i>v. 打喷嚏</i>            | let out the breath through the nose and mouth                   | A person <i>sneezes</i> when he has a cold. 当一个人感冒时，会打喷嚏。                                                                                         |
| <b>twine</b> (twain)<br><i>v. 盘曲；缠绕</i>           | wind or warp around; twist together                             | She <i>twined</i> her arms around his neck and kissed him. 她把手绕在他的脖子上亲吻他。                                                                         |
| <b>whirr</b> (hwə:)<br><i>v. 呼呼地转动</i>            | make a regular sound by something beating against the air       | When we got inside the factory, we couldn't hear the guide explain because of the <i>whirring</i> of the motors. 当我们进入工厂内时，因为马达呼呼地转动，使我们听不见向导的解说。 |

**Exercise 16.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Each morning she would get up; do the \_\_\_\_\_, then go next door for a talk with her neighbor.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ crossed the border by night to escape arrest.
3. A (An) \_\_\_\_\_ collects and records utterances, and, comparing these one another, abstracts the way of speaking.
4. The boy \_\_\_\_\_ his arms around his mother's leg and teased her for money to buy the toy.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ of Mongolians and Turks invaded Europe in the Middle Ages.

【解答】 1. chores 2. fugitive 3. linguist 4. twined 5. Hordes

### 成果测验

**Exercise 16.6** 由第二栏中选出第一栏各词的正确词意:

#### COLUMN I

#### COLUMN II

- |                    |                                           |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| _____ 1. lair      | (A) full of tiny holes                    |
| _____ 2. nightmare | (B) a spot on the skin                    |
| _____ 3. mole      | (C) a bunch of flowers                    |
| _____ 4. belch     | (D) to drink little by little             |
| _____ 5. upsurge   | (E) to throw out gas through the mouth    |
| _____ 6. porous    | (F) an unpleasant and terrible dream      |
| _____ 7. via       | (G) a condition of misfortune or distress |

- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. bouquet (H) the resting place of a wild animal  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 9. adversity (I) an upward turn or trend; rise  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 10. sip (J) by way of; by means of

**【解答】** 1. H 2. F 3. B 4. E 5. I 6. A 7. J 8. C 9. G 10. D

**Exercise 16. 7** 完整拼出下列句子所欠缺的单词,句后括号内为该词的词意:

1. Please take the basket of t \_\_\_\_\_ h to the garbage can. (*rubbish*)
2. Gasoline and other fuel oils are made from p \_\_\_\_\_ m. (*natural oil found in the earth*)
3. Lions and elephants are g \_\_\_\_\_ s; tigers are not. (*living in groups*)
4. When the knife slipped it made a g \_\_\_\_\_ h in his thumb. (*deep wound*)
5. An a \_\_\_\_\_ e is arranged by agreement on all sides, often while a permanent peace is being arranged. (*temporary peace*)
6. With a b \_\_\_\_\_ r we can determine height above sea level and predict probable changes in the weather. (*instrument for measuring the atmospheric pressure*)
7. Giving one's seat to a lady in a crowded bus is a sign of c \_\_\_\_\_ y. (*courtesy*)
8. The boys made a small s \_\_\_\_\_ k out of old boards in the backyard. (*roughly-built hut*)
9. Do not t \_\_\_\_\_ h the curtain aside; it may be torn off. (*pull with a sudden jerk*)
10. An open f \_\_\_\_\_ m on birth control was held in the hall last Tuesday evening. (*public discussion*)

**【解答】** 1. trash 2. petroleum 3. gregarious 4. gash  
 5. armistice 6. barometer 7. comity 8. shack  
 9. twitch 10. forum

**Exercise 16.8** 找出一个与其它三个不相关的单词:

- \_\_\_\_ 1. (A) horde (B) swarm (C) span (D) multitude
- \_\_\_\_ 2. (A) malice (B) courtesy (C) civility (D) comity
- \_\_\_\_ 3. (A) indulge (B) insert (C) interpose (D) interject
- \_\_\_\_ 4. (A) mushroom (B) fungus (C) coral (D) toadstool
- \_\_\_\_ 5. (A) austere (B) placid (C) severe (D) stern
- \_\_\_\_ 6. (A) dungeon (B) limbo (C) jail (D) castle
- \_\_\_\_ 7. (A) turf (B) manure (C) lawn (D) sod
- \_\_\_\_ 8. (A) coxcomb (B) fop (C) dandy (D) mole
- \_\_\_\_ 9. (A) trash (B) litter (C) rubbish (D) breach
- \_\_\_\_ 10. (A) rumple (B) crumple (C) scramble (D) wrinkle

**【解答】** 1. C 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. B 6. D 7. B 8. D 9. D 10. C

**Exercise 16.9** 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词,填入空格内:

**VOCABULARY LIST**

|          |          |           |            |
|----------|----------|-----------|------------|
| impunity | whirr    | smear     | patent     |
| crimson  | incurred | petroleum | gym        |
| rafts    | clatter  | twined    | gregarious |

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ came from the kitchen where pans were being washed.
2. They decided to build a large \_\_\_\_\_ for indoor athletic sports.
3. Be careful! If you touch the wall you will \_\_\_\_\_ the fresh paint.
4. The boatman \_\_\_\_\_ the rope around the post to prevent his boat from drifting down the river.
5. Before boats were invented, man first began to use \_\_\_\_\_ to cross rivers or streams.
6. The high price of \_\_\_\_\_ has driven many countries to develop new sources of energy.
7. A baby likes to play by himself, but as he grows older he becomes \_\_\_\_\_.
8. As what she said was proved to be lie, her face turned \_\_\_\_\_ with shame.
9. If laws are not enforced, crimes are committed with \_\_\_\_\_.
10. She \_\_\_\_\_ great debts by buying a luxurious car which she cannot afford.

【解答】 1. clatter 2. gym 3. smear 4. twined 5. rafts  
6. petroleum 7. gregarious 8. crimson  
9. impunity 10. incurred

## LESSON 17

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. We watched the *astronauts'* journey to the \_\_\_\_\_ on television.  
 (A) moon                                   (B) Antarctic
2. Many criminals were \_\_\_\_\_ on the *gallows*.  
 (A) hanged                                   (B) shot to death
3. You need a \_\_\_\_\_ to take part in *masquerade*.  
 (A) mask                                   (B) uniform
4. The *phoenix* often symbolizes \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) great victory                           (B) eternal life
5. He always felt that his father's \_\_\_\_\_ stigmatized both of them.  
 (A) prison record                           (B) glorious death

△解 答△  
1. A 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. A

(第一部分)

| WORD                                      | MEANING                                                                  | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                             |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>alloy</b> (ælɔɪ)<br>n. 合金              | substance consisting of two or more metals and mixed together            | An <i>alloy</i> is often harder, lighter, and stronger than the pure metals of which it is composed. 合金通常较其成分金属要硬、轻和牢固。 |
| <b>blackout</b><br>('blæk,aut)<br>n. 灯火管制 | the action of turning off all lights as a protection against an air raid | The streets were not lighted at night during the <i>blackout</i> . 在灯火管制的夜里，街道上不能开灯。                                    |

| WORD                           | MEANING                                                    | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>cater</b> (ˈkeɪtə)          | provide food and supplies; provide what is needed          | Who is supposed to <i>cater</i> for your daughter's wedding next week? 谁将为你女儿下周的婚礼承办酒席?                                                                                                                    |
| <b>cram</b> (kræm)             | 1. prepare oneself for an examination hastily<br>2. 填塞; 塞入 | He is <i>cramming</i> facts and dates for his history examination tomorrow. 为了明天历史课的考试, 他正在仓促地记诵着史实和日期。<br>He <i>crammed</i> as many candy bars into his pockets as they would hold. 他尽量多把棒棒糖塞进口袋, 到装不下为止。 |
| <b>fleece</b> (fli:s)          | rob by a trick or by charging too much money               | If you paid \$ 200 for the watch, you were <i>fleeced</i> . I saw it in a department store for \$ 70. 假若你以两百美元买了那只表, 那么你就被骗了, 我看到它在某个百货公司只卖七十元。                                                            |
| <b>habitat</b><br>(ˈhæbitæt)   | the natural home of a plant or animal                      | The jungle is the natural <i>habitat</i> of wild animals and plants. 丛林是野生动物和植物的栖息地。                                                                                                                       |
| <b>locksmith</b><br>(ˈlɒksmiθ) | a person who makes or repairs locks and keys               | I lost my key to the door, and I went to the <i>locksmith</i> to get a new one. 我掉了开门的钥匙, 于是就到锁匠那儿去打了一个新的。                                                                                                 |

| WORD                                                              | MEANING                                                  | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>pant</b> (pænt)<br><i>v.</i> 喘息                                | breathe hard and quickly; speak with short quick breaths | He <i>panted</i> excitedly giving us the news as he had just heard it. 他气喘如牛,兴奋地告诉我们他刚刚听到的事。                   |
| <b>rickety</b> ('rikiti)<br><i>adj.</i> 摆摇欲倒的                     | likely to fall or break down; shaky or weak; tottering   | Don't use that old cart; it's <i>rickety</i> . 不要用那破马车,因为它搖搖晃晃的。                                               |
| <b>stigmatize</b><br>('stigmatizaɪz)<br><i>v.</i> 描绘;叙述(不名誉的人或行动) | set some mark of disgrace on; reproach                   | He has been <i>stigmatized</i> as a coward and liar. 他被描述成一个懦夫和说谎者。                                            |
| <b>unquenchable</b><br>(ʌn'kwenʃəbl)<br><i>adj.</i> 难抑制的;不能镇压的    | not capable of being satisfied; not quenchable           | Having been in the desert without water for two days, his thirst was <i>unquenchable</i> . 他已经沙漠中没水地待了两天,口渴极了。 |

**Exercise 17.1** 从第一部分选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- Many students \_\_\_\_\_ for the final examination in the library all through the night.
- The dog \_\_\_\_\_ along behind its master's horse.
- A (An) \_\_\_\_\_ of gold and copper is harder and less costly than gold alone.
- He runs a restaurant and also \_\_\_\_\_ for wedding and parties.
- As to our white wine, they \_\_\_\_\_ it as a mere substitute for cider.

**【解答】** 1. crammed 2. panted 3. alloy 4. caters 5. stigmatized

《第二部分》

| WORD                                                      | MEANING                                                        | TYPICAL USE                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>astronaut</b><br>[æstrənɔ:t]<br><i>n.</i> 太空人          | a pilot or member of the crew of a spacecraft; cosmonaut       | The <i>astronauts</i> of the United States are returning to the earth from the moon. 美国太空人正由月球返回地球。    |
| <b>bequeath</b><br>[bi'kwi:θ]<br><i>n.</i> 遗赠；遗留          | give or pass on to others after death                          | One age <i>bequeaths</i> its knowledge to the next. 上一代将其知识遗留给下一代。                                     |
| <b>census</b> [ˈsensəs]<br><i>n.</i> 人口调查；户口调查            | an official count of a country's total population              | In the United states there is a <i>census</i> every ten years. 在美国每十年有一次人口调查。                          |
| <b>crusade</b><br>[kru:'seid]<br><i>n.</i> 宗教上的圣战；反对某事的运动 | the Christian expedition; a campaign or fight for a good cause | Everyone of the city was asked to join the <i>crusade</i> for better housing. 城市中的每个人都被要求去参加这个改善住房的活动。 |
| <b>ford</b> [fɔ:d]<br><i>n.</i> 涉水                        | cross a river or stream by walking through the water           | The stream was so deep that we could not <i>ford</i> it. 河水太深了，以至于我们无法涉水而过。                            |

| WORD                              | MEANING                                                                                                                                | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>hover</b> ('həʊvə)             | stay in or near one place                                                                                                              | The dog <i>hovers</i> around the kitchen door every mealtime. 每到吃饭时间,那只狗就守在厨房门边。                                                                                                           |
| <b>masquerade</b><br>[mæskə'reid] | 1. n. 化装舞会<br><br>1. a party or dance at which masks and fancy costumes are worn<br><br>2. 乔装;伪装<br>2. disguise oneself; pretend to be | They were all dressed up to attend the <i>masquerade</i> . 他们都盛装去参加那个化装舞会。<br><br>He got a free ticket to the play by <i>masquerading</i> as a friend of the actors. 他伪装成演员们的朋友而得到一张免费的戏票。 |
| <b>phoenix</b> ('fi:niks)         | n. 长生鸟<br><br>an imaginary bird symbolizing eternal life                                                                               | The <i>phoenix</i> is believed to live for 500 years and then burn itself and be born again from the ashes. 长生鸟被认为能活五百年,然后就燃烧自己,再由灰烬中诞生。                                                   |
| <b>rye</b> (rai)                  | n. 裸麦;黑麦<br><br>a plant with grain for making flour and as food for cattle                                                             | Some people prefer the dark bread made from <i>rye</i> to the white bread made from wheat. 有些人喜欢黑麦做的黑面包,而不喜欢小麦做的白面包。                                                                       |
| <b>stunt</b> (stʌnt)              | n. 惊人的技艺;引人注意的行动<br><br>a feat to attract attention; act showing boldness or skill                                                     | In the film he jumps off a running car and performs other dangerous <i>stunts</i> . 在电影中他跳下正在跑动的汽车并表演了其他的惊人绝技。                                                                             |

| WORD                                  | MEANING | TYPICAL USE                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>versus</b> [və'ses] <i>prep.</i> 对 | against | The most exciting game in hockey, was Harvard <i>versus</i> Yale.<br>最刺激的一场曲棍球赛是哈佛对耶鲁的这一场。 |

**Exercise 17.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The helicopter \_\_\_\_\_ over the spot where the lost men had been seen.
2. After the Second World War, many Japanese joined in the \_\_\_\_\_ for the warless world.
3. The millionaire will \_\_\_\_\_ his colossal fortune to his only son.
4. The plane flew upside down, turned over twice, and did a few more \_\_\_\_\_ before landing.
5. The bridge is too far away from here. We'd better \_\_\_\_\_ the stream here.

【解答】 1. hovered 2. crusade 3. bequeath 4. stunts 5. ford

~~~~~《第三部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|---|
| artillery [ɑ:tɪləri] <i>n.</i> 大炮 | large, heavy guns moved on wheel carriers; cannon | Above all the <i>artillery</i> was the deciding factor in the battle. 在战争中大炮是最重要的决定因素。 |
| bounty ['baunti] <i>n.</i> 施与 | money given by a government for some special act or service | In the early days of the West many states paid a <i>bounty</i> for captured criminals. 早期西方许多国家会施与被俘的罪犯一笔钱。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|--|
| clench [klen(t)s] <i>n.</i> 紧握 | close tightly together; grasp firmly | When he got a shot against typhus, the child clenched his teeth in pain. 当那小孩接受伤寒预防注射时,痛苦得紧咬着牙。 |
| dirk [də:k] <i>n.</i> 短剑;匕首 | a short, pointed, two-edged knife used as a weapon | I saw a burglar, with a dirk in his hand, getting into the room where she was sleeping. 我看见一个小偷手中拿着匕首,进入她正在睡觉的房间。 |
| gallows ['gælouz] <i>n.</i> 绞刑 | a wooden frame with a rope from which criminals are hanged; punishment by hanging | The murderer entreated the judge for mercy, but was sentenced to the gallows . 那个杀人凶手恳求法官宽恕,但被判处绞刑。 |
| inedible [in'edibl] <i>adj.</i> 不可食的;不宜食用的 | not suitable for eating; not edible | My steak, though delicious, was mostly fat and bones. Most of it was inedible . 我的牛排虽然美味,但多半是肥的和骨头,大部分都不能吃。 |
| morale [mɔ:ræl] <i>n.</i> 民心;士气 | the state of mind with regard to pride or faith | The morale of the football team was very low after its defeat. 比赛失败后,这支足球队的士气非常低落。 |
| prone [pron] <i>adj.</i> 1. 易于……的 | inclined; liable; disposed; apt | We are more prone to make mistakes when we are tired. 当我们疲倦的时候较容易犯错。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|------------------------|--|--|
| 2. 斜倚的 | 2. lying face down; lying flat; incumbent; prostrate | We fell <i>prone</i> on the ground and drank water from the spring. 我们斜倒在地面上喝泉水。 |
| scuttle (skʌtl) | run with quick, hurried steps; scurry | The robbers grasped the peril of their position and <i>scuttled</i> away. 抢劫者知道他们处境的危险,于是很快地逃走了。 |
| tack (tæk) | a short nail or pin with a flat head | The carpet was fastened to the floor with <i>tacks</i> . 地毯被用大头钉固定在地板上。 |
| ward (wɔ:d) | a person who is under legal protection | After his parents' death, the court made him a <i>ward</i> of his aunt. 他双亲过世后,法官让他的姑妈当监护人。 |

Exercise 17. 3 从第三部分中选取最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- Some people hunt fugitives from the law or harmful animals to collect the _____ for their capture.
- The children who had broken the window of the house _____ off when they saw a policeman.
- We bought some _____ to fasten the small picture to the wall.
- Trapped in the cave by a fall of rock, the men kept up their _____ by singing together.
- While it was thundering, the little boy _____ his mother's arm in terror.

【解答】 1. bounty 2. scuttled 3. tacks 4. morale 5. clenched

~~~~~《第四部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|--|
| avalanche
('ævələnʃ) | a large mass of snow crashing down the side of mountain
<i>n. 雪崩</i> | The terrible avalanche buried the whole village, and very few people survived it. 可怕的雪崩埋住了整个村庄,很少人活下来。 |
| briefcase
('bri:fkeis) | a flat bag for carrying loose papers or books
<i>n. 公事包</i> | I was so in a hurry that I left my briefcase at home. 我太匆忙了,以致于将公事包留在家里。 |
| commodious
(kə'moudjəs) | having plenty of room; spacious; roomy
<i>adj. 宽敞的</i> | The apartment is not commodious enough for his family to live in. 这公寓不够宽敞,无法住下他们全家。 |
| dynasty ('dinəsti, 'dainəsti)
<i>n. 王朝</i> | a series of rulers who belong to the same family | The Bourbon dynasty ruled France for more than two hundred years. 波旁王朝统治法国超过两百年。 |
| gibberish
('gibərɪʃ) | senseless chatter; confused meaningless talk; jargon; gabble
<i>n. 乱语</i> | After he got out of the bar, he suddenly began to yell drunken gibberish on the sidewalk. 他走出酒馆后,突然在人行道上开始大声喊着醉话。 |
| invoke (in'vouk)
<i>n. 恳求;祈求</i> | ask earnestly; request or beg for | I invoked his forgiveness many times, but failed to move him. 我好几次请求他的原谅,但一点也无法打动他。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|---|
| myriad [ˈmɪriəd]
<i>n.</i> 巨数;一万 | a very great number; ten thousand | There are <i>myriads</i> of stars in the sky at night; we cannot count them. 夜里天上有无数星星, 我们无法计算。 |
| quarry [ˈkwɔːri]
<i>n.</i> 采石场 | a place from which stone, sand, etc. are dug out | Thousands of men and women are working in the <i>quarry</i> to get stones for use in building the castle. 数以千计的男人和女人们在采石场掘取筑城堡用的石头。 |
| slum [slʌm]
<i>n.</i> 贫民区 | a city area of poor living conditions and dirty buildings | Poverty and disease are common in the <i>slums</i> . 在贫民区里, 贫困和疾病是很普遍的。 |
| tinkle [ˈtɪŋkl]
<i>n.</i> 使发叮当声 | make short, light, ringing sounds | He <i>tinkled</i> his coins together in his pocket. 他使口袋中的硬币碰在一起发出叮当声。 |
| whirlpool
[ˈhwɜːl,puːl]
<i>n.</i> 漩涡 | a place with circular currents of water | The swimmer caught in the <i>whirlpool</i> struggled to keep from drowning. 被卷进漩涡的游泳者, 挣扎着以免溺水。 |

Exercise 17. 4 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The history shows that China was in a prosperous condition under the Ming _____. ●
2. The government is tearing down the ____ and building new houses.
3. When you swim, do not get close to the ____; you may be drowned.
4. Even during change of classes there is no crowding because the halls and stairways are _____. ●

5. The country faced with famine is expected to _____ the help of its more fortunate neighbors.

【解答】 1. dynasty 2. slums 3. whirlpool 4. commodious 5. invoke

~~~~~**(第五部分)**~~~~~

| WORD                                               | MEANING                                          | TYPICAL USE                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>blockade</b><br>[blə'keid]<br><i>n.</i> 封锁      | the shutting up of a place by police or soldiers | We ended our <i>blockade</i> of the enemy's port when peace was established. 当和平建立时,我们结束对敌人港口的封锁。     |
| <b>burrow</b> [ˈbʌrou] <i>n.</i> 动物所掘地之洞;洞穴        | a hole dug in the ground by an animal for refuge | The fox likes to live in a <i>burrow</i> ; it's warm in winter and cool in summer. 狐狸喜欢住在洞穴里;因为它冬暖夏凉。 |
| <b>corollary</b><br>[kə'rɔləri]<br><i>n.</i> 自然之结果 | natural consequence or result                    | Destruction and suffering are <i>corollaries</i> of war. 破坏和苦难是战争的自然结果。                               |
| <b>fawn</b> [fɔ:n]<br><i>n.</i> 巴结;奉承              | try to get favor by acting on a flattering way   | Many flattering relatives <i>fawned</i> on the rich old man. 许多好谄媚的亲戚去巴结那个富有的老人。                      |
| <b>grope</b> [grɔ:p]<br><i>n.</i> 摸索               | feel about with the hands                        | He <i>groped</i> for the light switch in the dark basement. 在黑暗的地下室中,他摸索着电灯的开关。                       |
| <b>latch</b> [lætʃ]<br><i>n.</i> 门锁                | a simple fastening for a door or gate            | He turned the <i>latch</i> of the door and opened it so gently. 他转开门锁轻轻地把门打开。                         |

| WORD                                                   | MEANING                                                                                  | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>nostalgia</b><br>[nɔ:stæl'dʒɪə]<br><i>n.</i> 乡愁；思乡病 | a painful yearning for one's home; yearning for something in the past                    | The soldiers were filled with <b>nostalgia</b> by hearing my old favorite song. 士兵们听了我喜欢的老歌后，心中充满了乡愁。                                                                                                                      |
| <b>resound</b><br>[ri'zaund]<br><i>n.</i> (使)再响；高声响    | be loudly and clearly heard; give back sound                                             | The notes of the hunting horn <b>resounded</b> through the forest. 打猎的号角声响彻森林。                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>splinter</b> [ˈsplɪntə]<br>1. <i>n.</i> 碎裂<br>2. 碎片 | 1. split or break into small pieces<br>2. a sharp pointed piece broken off hard material | The fireman <b>splintered</b> the locked door with an ax to save the boy in the room. 消防队员用斧头将紧锁的门劈开，以解救房里的小孩。<br>No one in the plane survived the crash; it crashed down into <b>splinters</b> . 在空难事件中没有一个人活存，因为飞机坠毁成碎片。 |
| <b>truce</b> [tru:s]<br><i>n.</i> 休战；停战                | the act of stopping fighting; peace for a short time; armistice                          | A <b>truce</b> was declared at Christmas between the two armies. 在圣诞节当天双方军队宣布停战。                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>vernacular</b><br>[və'nækjuleɪ] <i>n.</i> 本国语；土语    | the language spoken by the members of a certain country or place                         | There is not a single grammar book on the <b>vernacular</b> of this African tribe. 这些非洲部落的土语是没有语法的。                                                                                                                        |

**Exercise 17.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格：

1. Before you open the window you have to turn its \_\_\_\_\_.
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ on her only to borrow money; in fact he does not like her so much.
3. The blind man \_\_\_\_\_ his way to the door of the room.
4. A five-day \_\_\_\_\_ was declared between the two armies on New Year's Day.
5. The name of the new champion \_\_\_\_\_ all over the world.

【解答】 1. latch 2. fawns 3. groped 4. truce 5. resounded

### 成果测验

**Exercise 17.6** 由第二栏中选出第一栏各词的正确词意：

#### COLUMN I

#### COLUMN II

- |                    |                                        |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------|
| _____ 1. clench    | (A) the area of poor living conditions |
| _____ 2. invoke    | (B) to give to others after death      |
| _____ 3. slum      | (C) a feat to attract attention        |
| _____ 4. artillery | (D) to rob by a trick                  |
| _____ 5. latch     | (E) to ask earnestly; beg for          |
| _____ 6. fleece    | (F) large heavy guns                   |
| _____ 7. stunt     | (G) to grasp firmly                    |
| _____ 8. bequeath  | (H) a simple fastening for a door      |
| _____ 9. splinter  | (I) to stay near one place             |
| _____ 10. hover    | (J) to break into small pieces         |

**【解答】** 1. G 2. E 3. A 4. F 5. H 6. D 7. C 8. B 9. J 10. I

**Exercise 17. 7** 完整拼出下列各句中所欠缺的单词，句后括号内为该词的词意：

1. she could put all her clothes in one c \_\_\_\_\_ s drawer. (*spacious*)
2. An a \_\_\_\_\_ e often carries with it thousands of tons of rock, and sometimes destroys houses and roads. (*large mass of snow*)
3. Good health is a c \_\_\_\_\_ y of good nutrition. (*natural consequence*)
4. Terribly drunken men are apt to quarrel with others or yell g \_\_\_\_\_ h on the street. (*confused meaningless talk*)
5. The poisonous mushrooms are not suitable for eating; they are i \_\_\_\_\_ e. (*not eatable*)
6. One who has to spend so much of his life in foreign countries always feels n \_\_\_\_\_ a. (*painful yearning for one's home*)
7. He hammered a t \_\_\_\_\_ k into the wall and hung the picture from it. (*short nail with a flat head*)
8. Two robbers sneaked into the room and one of them pointed his d \_\_\_\_\_ k toward the old man's neck. (*short knife as a weapon*)
9. A m \_\_\_\_\_ d of thoughts passed through her mind. (*great number*)
10. We are p \_\_\_\_\_ e to think evil of people whom we do not like. (*apt*)

**【解答】** 1. commodious 2. avalanche 3. corollary 4. gibberish  
 5. inedible 6. nostalgia 7. tack 8. dirk 9. myriad  
 10. prone

**Exercise 17.8** 选出最适合句意的一个单词：

1. Many teenagers have a (an) \_\_\_\_\_ thirst for adventure stories; they read one after another.  
 (A) commodious                            (B) unquenchable
2. A \_\_\_\_\_ of all the harbors would require thousands of warships.  
 (A) blockade                                (B) truce
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ my way to the seat in the dark theater.  
 (A) groped                                 (B) scuttled
4. There are many strange words on the \_\_\_\_\_ of lawyers.  
 (A) crusade                                (B) vernacular
5. Don't take a seat on the \_\_\_\_\_ chair; it might be broken down.  
 (A) rickety                                (B) sturdy

【解答】

1. B

2. A

3. A

4. B

5. A

**Exercise 17.9** 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：**VOCABULARY LIST**

|             |           |           |             |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| habitat     | blackout  | locksmith | blockade    |
| alloy       | versus    | fleeced   | vernacular  |
| stigmatized | resounded | forged    | masqueraded |

1. They \_\_\_\_\_ their political opponent as a liar so as to make him unpopular.
2. The prince who \_\_\_\_\_ as a peasant walked into the town, and no one recognized him.
3. If you paid \$ 1,000 for the used car, you were \_\_\_\_\_. The mechanic says it's worth no more than \$ 500.
4. Brass is a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ of copper and zinc.
5. After the earthquake the police set up a(an) \_\_\_\_\_ into the town to

prevent looting.

6. If you lose the key to your apartment, you can get a new one from the \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The noise of laughter and whistles \_\_\_\_\_ through the empty corridor.
8. The big cricket match is starting today; it's England \_\_\_\_\_.  
Australia.
9. During the enemy's air raid we have to turn off or conceal all the lights for a perfect \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Having lived in the United States for a long time, he had gotten used to speaking English. But when he returned home to Korea he soon lapsed into his \_\_\_\_\_.

【解答】 1. stigmatized 2. masqueraded 3. fleeced 4. alloy  
5. blockade 6. locksmith 7. resounded 8. versus  
9. blackout 10. vernacular

## LESSON 18

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. Most *anesthetics* put the patients to \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) pain      (B) delight      (C) sleep
2. They found a *cavern* in the side of the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) moutain      (B) building      (C) cabinet
3. *Chisels* are used to \_\_\_\_\_ wood, stone or metal.  
 (A) cut      (B) melt      (C) decorate
4. *Gruel* is often given to those who are \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) diligent, sincere, or excellent  
 (B) deserved to be punished  
 (C) sick or very old
5. *Soot* usually collects \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) in the shallow, warm stream  
 (B) under the branches of a tree  
 (C) on the inside of chimneys

△解 答 △  
1. C 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. C

~~~~~《第一部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|---|
| anesthetic
[ænɪs'tetɪk]
<i>n.</i> 麻醉剂；麻药 | substance that produce inability to feel pain | The use of <i>anesthetics</i> is less than a hundred years old. 麻醉剂的使用还不到一百年。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|--|
| beacon [ˈbi:kən]
<i>n.</i> 烽火；信号 | a light or fire used as a signal to guide or warn | The fire on the hill was a <i>beacon</i> to the villagers that the enemy was coming. 山丘上的火是通知村民敌人来了的信号。 |
| coroner [kɔ:rənə]
<i>n.</i> 验尸官 | an official who investigates the cause of death | The <i>coroner</i> concluded that the death of the old woman was accidental. 验尸官断定那个妇人的死亡是意外的。 |
| duel [dju(:)əl]
<i>n.</i> 决斗；相斗 | a formal fight to settle a quarrel or avenge an insult | They decided to settle their quarrel by a <i>duel</i> . 他们决定以决斗来解决他们的纷争。 |
| graft [gra:fɪt]
<i>v.</i> 嫁接 | put a shoot from one tree into a slit in another tree | Peach trees can be <i>grafted</i> on plum trees. 桃树可以被嫁接到梅树上。 |
| impersonal
[im'pə:sənl]
<i>adj.</i> 一般人称的 | not influenced by personal feeling | "First come, first served" is an <i>impersonal</i> remark. "先到，先得"是不以特定人为对象的语句。 |
| loom [lu:m]
<i>v.</i> 隐现；隐约可现 | appear dimly or vaguely | A large iceberg <i>loomed</i> through the thick, gray fog. 从厚厚的、灰灰的雾中隐约可见一座大冰山。 |
| peal [pi:l]
<i>n.</i> 响声；很响的铃声 | a loud, long sound; the loud ringing of bells | As the speaker made a funny joke, <i>peals</i> of laughter rang through the auditorium. 当演说者说了一个有趣的笑话时，响亮的笑声传遍了礼堂。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|--|
| roundup
[raundʌp]
<i>n.</i> 赶拢；围捕 | bring cattle together; a gathering | The missing cattle are discovered in the annual <i>roundup</i> . 那头遗失的牛被发现在一年一度的围捕中。 |
| staggle ['strægl]
<i>v.</i> 散开；迷途 | wander in a scattered fashion; roam ; stray from the rest | The cowboys worked all night to gather the cattle that had <i>straggled</i> behind the rest of the herd. 牧童们工作了整夜，以聚集那些离了队散落在后面的牛群。 |
| ulterior
[ʌltɪəriə]
<i>adj.</i> 隐密的；未揭露的 | beyond what is seen or expressed; hidden or kept secret | He was suspected of having <i>ulterior</i> motives for making his generous offer, but in fact his offer was from the bottom of his heart. 他的慷慨奉献被怀疑是有隐秘不明的动机，但是事实上他是出自内心的。 |

Exercise 18.1 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. We _____ a branch of a tree on another tree so that it will grow there permanently.
2. He was very tired, and he fell asleep in spite of _____ of thunder.
3. As the children walked along the street, they _____ behind their parents.
4. The answers from a(an) _____ of scholars and business leaders helped the President set up his policies.
5. History should be written from a(an) _____ point of view.

【解答】 1. graft 2. peals 3. straggled 4. roundup 5. impersonal

《第二部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|---|
| auction (ɔ:kʃən)
<i>n. 拍卖</i> | public sale of goods to the person who offers the most money | The old Chippendale chair was sold at a good price at the auction . 那把旧齐本德耳式椅子在拍卖时卖了很好的价钱。 |
| calligraphy (kə'ligrəfi)
<i>n. 书法</i> | beautiful writing by hand | The old man is famous for superb calligraphy . 那个老人以出色的书法著名。 |
| cope (koup)
<i>v. 应付</i> | fight with some degree of success; get on successfully | Jean felt unable to cope with driving in heavy traffic after her accident. 珍出了车祸后, 在交通拥挤时她总觉得无法驾驶得很顺利。 |
| cucumber ('kjukəmbeɪ)
<i>n. 黄瓜</i> | a long green vegetable with firm flesh seed inside | Please get some cucumbers in the vegetable section; I'll make pickles. 请在卖蔬果部门买些黄瓜, 我想做腌瓜。 |
| gruel (gruel)
<i>n. 粥</i> | a nearly liquid food | Her grandfather is 90 years old, and every mealtime she has to prepare gruel for him by boiling oatmeal in water. 她的祖父现年九十多岁, 每餐她必须为他煮麦片粥。 |
| hustle (hʌsl)
<i>v. 驱赶</i> | push or shove roughly; bustle; jostle | She hustled off her children to school and started working. 她驱孩子上学, 然后开始工作。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--------------------------------|--|---|
| maneuver
(mə'nju:və) | 1. planned movement of the armed forces; shillful plan or movement | Every year the army and the navy hold <i>maneuvers</i> for practice. 每年陆军和海军都举行防空演习。 |
| | 2. n. 调遣；操纵
演习 | She <i>maneuvered</i> her car into a narrow parking space with ease. 她轻易地操纵着她的车，进入很窄的停车场。 |
| plight (plait) | a bad or dangerous situation; predicament | He was in a terrible <i>plight</i> , trapped at the back of the cave. 他正处于恶劣的情势，被诱入洞穴的后面。 |
| scoff (skɔ:f) | speak or act disrespectfully; laugh at; sneer; jeer | I came to the meeting to <i>scoff</i> , but the speaker persuaded me. 我来嘲弄这个会议，但被演说者劝阻了。 |
| stun (stʌn) | knock unconscious; make senseless | She was <i>stunned</i> by the news of her mother's death. 她听到母亲过世的消息惊呆了。 |
| vulture ('vʌltʃə) | a large bird related to the eagle | A <i>vulture</i> usually lives on the flesh of dead animals. 兀鹰靠死去的动物的肉来维生。 |

Exercise 18.2 从第二部分中选出最适当的单词，填入空格内：

- Many people at the _____ bid on the old furniture, but he was given the contract for it.
- Mother could not _____ with all the housework and two sick children.

3. The policemen caught the thief on the street and _____ him into their van.
4. She was in a sad _____ when her husband got ill and she had quite inadequate money for his medical expenses.
5. When we refused to use his idea, he tried to force it on us by a series of _____.

【解答】 1. auction 2. cope 3. hustled 4. plight 5. maneuvers

《第三部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|--|
| bankrupt
(<i>'bæŋkrəpt</i>)
<i>n.</i> 破产者; 无还
债能力者 | a person who is
unable to pay his
debts | After his store burned, the
storekeeper became a <i>bankrupt</i> .
店给烧毁后,店主就破产了。 |
| cavern (<i>'kævən</i>)
<i>n.</i> 巨穴 | a large deep cave | It suddenly began to shower,
and we took refuge in the <i>cavern</i> .
突然下起阵雨来,我们躲进洞穴里
躲避。 |
| chrysanthemum
(<i>kri'sænθəməm</i>)
<i>n.</i> 菊花 | any of various
types of garden
plant with round
flower | <i>Chrysanthemum</i> usually blooms
in fall and shows great varieties
in the size and color of its flower.
菊花通常在秋天开,开着各式各样
大小颜色不同的花。 |
| fishery (<i>'fɪʃəri</i>)
<i>n.</i> 渔业; 渔场 | the occupation of
catching fish; a
place for catch-
ing or breeding
fish | The inhabitants of the port are
occupied mainly with <i>fishery</i> . 港
口的居民们主要从事渔业。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| gust [gʌst]
<i>n.</i> 阵风；一阵 | a sudden, violent rush of wind; a short outflow of feeling | In a <i>gust</i> of uncontrollable anger he broke the picture in pieces. 他在无法控制的发怒中，将图画撕成碎片。 |
| ingratiate
[ɪn'greɪʃeɪt]
<i>v.</i> 逢迎；讨好 | make (oneself) very pleasant to someone in order to gain favor | She tried to <i>ingratiate</i> herself with the teacher by offering some precious gifts. 她试着以珍贵的礼物来讨好她的教师。 |
| munition
[mju(ː)nɪʃən]
<i>n.</i> 军火；军需品 | materiel used in war such as guns, shells, bombs, etc. | The reason why we lost the war was not just because of a shortage of <i>munitions</i> . 我们打仗失败的原因并不只是因为军火短缺。 |
| prostrate
[prə'streɪt]
<i>n.</i> 平卧；卧倒 | lay down flat; cast down | The wretched slaves <i>prostrated</i> themselves before their master. 可怜的奴隶卧倒在他们主人的面前。 |
| smolder
['smouldə]
<i>v.</i> 闷烧；潜伏 | burn and smoke without flame; continue in a suppressed condition | The campfire <i>smoldered</i> for several hours after the blaze died down. 火焰渐熄后，营火闷烧了好几个小时。 |
| tatoo [tæ'tu:]
<i>n.</i> 连续的轻敲 | a series of taps or raps; beating of drums or bugles | The hail beat a loud <i>tatoo</i> on the windowpane. 冰雹落在窗户的玻璃上，连续地敲响出很大的声音。 |
| wield [wɪld]
<i>v.</i> 支配；控制 | use or control skillfully; manage; control | In a democratic system it is the people that <i>wield</i> the power. 在民主体制中，人民掌握权力。 |

Exercise 18.3 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. He was beating a (an) _____ on the table with his fingers while singing a pop song.
2. The people's discontent _____ for years before it broke out into open rebellion.
3. While he was walking down the street, a (an) _____ of chilly wind blew his hat off.
4. We have to save our _____ to meet the enemy's attack in the near future.
5. All the captives except him _____ themselves before the conqueror.

【解答】 1. tatoo 2. smoldered 3. gust 4. munitions 5. prostrated

(第四部分)

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|-------------------------------------|--|---|
| allude (ə'lju:d)
v. 暗指；提及 | refer indirectly; mention slightly; insinuate | In his letter he <i>alluded</i> me to a matter which I had completely forgotten. 他在信中向我提及一件我已经完全忘了的事。 |
| chisel ('tʃizl)
n. 镊子；凿子 | a tool with a sharp cutting edge at the end of a strong blade. | A <i>chisel</i> and a hammer are indispensable tools for a sculptor. 对一个雕刻家来说，镊子和铁锤是不可缺少的工具。 |
| cricket ('krikit)
n. 蟋蟀 | a small brown insect related to the grasshopper. | Male <i>crickets</i> make a chirping noise by rubbing their front wings together. 雄蟋蟀凭借前翅的摩擦发出唧唧声。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|---|
| flit (flit)
<i>v.</i> 飞跃;轻快地飞 | fly or move lightly and swiftly; flutter | As we stepped into the bush, birds <i>flitted</i> from tree to tree. 我们走进灌木丛时,鸟儿在树间飞跃。 |
| high-handed
('hai'hændid)
<i>adj.</i> 专横的;
高压的 | using one's power too forcefully; domineering; autocratic | It was rather <i>high-handed</i> to punish the child for the accident. 为了这意外事件而处罚孩子,真是专横。 |
| lag (læg)
<i>v.</i> 慢慢地走;落后 | fall behind; move too slowly | The child <i>lagged</i> behind others because he was very tired. 这个小孩因为非常疲倦而落后于其他小孩。 |
| naughty ('nɔ:tɪ)
<i>adj.</i> 顽皮的;淘气的 | not obedient; bad in behavior; mischievous | You <i>naughty</i> boy! I told you not to play on the road. 这个顽皮的小孩!我告诉过你不要在马路上玩。 |
| rattle ('rætl)
<i>n.</i> 嘎嘎声 | a number of short, sharp sound | We used to hear the <i>rattle</i> of the milk bottles in the early morning. 我们习惯于听那清早牛奶瓶的嘎嘎作响声。 |
| soot (sut)
<i>n.</i> 煤烟;油烟 | a black substance in the smoke | <i>Soot</i> is caused by incomplete burning and makes smoke dark. 油烟是起因于不完全燃烧而使烟变黑。 |
| tributary
('tribjutəri)
<i>n.</i> 支流 | a stream or river that flows into a large one; a nation that pays tribute to another | The Ohio River is one of the <i>tributaries</i> of the Mississippi River. 俄亥俄河是密西西比河的一条支流。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|---|
| undo (ʌn'du:)
v. 1. 废弃;打消
2. 解开 | 1. cause to be as if never done; cancel or reverse; rescind
2. unfasten, untie, or open | The workmen mended the road, but a heavy storm undid their work. 一场暴风雨破坏了工人们已修补好的道路。
The children began to undo the string round the parcel too see what was in it. 小孩们开始解开那绑着包裹的绳子,看看里面到底是什么东西。 |
| | | |

Exercise 18. 4 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. We found it hard to like the new boy because of his _____ manners.
2. She did not say Mr. Smith's name, but it was clear she was _____ to him.
3. The Soviet Union still _____ far behind the United States in the exploration of the space.
4. The Roman Empire had many _____ around it at its golden age.
5. The teacher punished the _____ girl; she had been disobedient to her teacher.

【解答】 1. high-handed 2. alluding 3. lags 4. tributaries
5. naughty

《第五部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| belabor (bɪ'ləibə)
v. 重打;痛击 | beat vigorously; thrash | The rider belabored his tired horse with a stick. 骑士用鞭子重重地打了那匹疲倦的马。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|---|
| circumference
[sə'kʌmferəns]
<i>n.</i> 圆周；周围 | the boundary line of a circle or of certain other surfaces | After dinner they walked around the <i>circumference</i> of the lake. 晚饭后他们沿着湖的周围漫步。 |
| devolve [di'velv]
<i>v.</i> 传下；授与 | be handed down to someone else; be transferred | In case of failure of direct descendants, the throne <i>devolves</i> upon the nearest prince. 如果没有直系子孙，王位就传给最亲近的王子。 |
| fret [fret]
<i>v.</i> 烦躁；激怒 | (cause to) be continually worried and anxious | Don't <i>fret</i> too much; everything will be all right. 不要烦躁不安，每件事都会很顺利的。 |
| honk [hɔŋk]
<i>v.</i> (雁)鸣叫 | make the cry of wild goose | The wild geese <i>honked</i> high in the autumn sky. 雁在秋天的空中鸣叫。 |
| levy ['levi]
<i>v.</i> 征集；征税 | collect by authority or force | The government decided to <i>levy</i> a tax on tobacco; it had been free from tax. 政府决定征收烟草税，这向来是不征税的。 |
| override
[,ouvrə'raɪd]
<i>v.</i> 不顾；藐视 | prevail over; take no notice of | The new rule <i>overrides</i> all the previous ones. 新的法规不顾所有旧的规定。 |
| rally ['ræli]
<i>v.</i> 重整；重振；集合 | bring together again; come together again | The scattered soldiers were <i>rallied</i> in the <u>vale</u> for the next attack. 为了下次的出击，分散了的士兵被集合在山谷中。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---------------------------------------|---|---|
| sprawl (ˈsprɔ:l)
v. 仰卧;伸开手脚 | stretch out one-self or one's limbs | Many people <i>sprawled</i> on the beach in their bathing suits. 许多人穿着泳衣在海滨仰卧。 |
| trudge (trʌdʒ)
v. 跋涉;吃力地走 | walk heavily
wearily, or with effort | The old man <i>trudged</i> through the deep snow back towards home. 老人在深雪中跋涉走向家中。 |

Exercise 18.5 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The girl at the camp _____ to get the meals when the cook was sick.
2. Every point on the _____ of a circle is at the same distance from the center.
3. You must not _____ other's happiness in pursuit of your own.
4. If the president is unable to handle his duties, they _____ upon the vice-president.
5. The man concerned with his responsibilities will not be _____ about the matter of his privileges.

【解答】 1. rallied 2. circumference 3. override 4. devolve
5. fretted

成 果 测 验

Exercise 18.6 由第二栏中选出第一栏各词的正确词意:

| COLUMN I | COLUMN II |
|--------------------------|--|
| _____ 1. <i>gruel</i> | (A) to fall behind; move too slowly |
| _____ 2. <i>levy</i> | (B) a light or fire used as a signal |
| _____ 3. <i>munition</i> | (C) a nearly liquid food |
| _____ 4. <i>lag</i> | (D) to fight with some degree of success |

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| _____ 5. <i>beacon</i> | (E) to prevail over |
| _____ 6. <i>override</i> | (F) the planned movement of the armed forces |
| _____ 7. <i>cope</i> | (G) materiel used in war |
| _____ 8. <i>stun</i> | (H) to bring together again |
| _____ 9. <i>rally</i> | (I) to make unconscious |
| _____ 10. <i>maneuver</i> | (J) to collect by authority or force |

【解答】 1. C 2. J 3. G 4. A 5. B 6. E 7. D 8. I 9. H 10. F

Exercise 18.7 拼出下列各句所缺的单词，括号内为该词的词意：

1. When the commander is unable to handle his duties, they e upon the next-ranking officer. (*are handed down*)
2. He is almost exhausted now; he had to e about 20 miles along the rugged road. (*walk heavily and wearily*)
3. In China, c y is a higher accomplishment than painting. (*beautiful writing by hand*)
4. When a person is declared to be a b t by the court of law, his property is distributed among the people to whom he owes money. (*person unable to pay his debts*)
5. A c n has three zones: the open area just inside the entrance, a twilight region and the perfectly dark interior. (*large deep cave*)
6. At the f y we saw long trays of fish eggs under water that would turn into trouts later. (*a place for breeding fish*)
7. He is rather unfamiliar to me, but frequently calls on me with expensive gifts. I can't understand his u r purpose for doing so. (*hidden*)
8. C ir is eaten usually in thin slices in a salad, or used to make pickles. (*long green vegetable*)
9. He insulted me in public, and I challenged him to a d l. (*formal*)

fight)

10. One of the old lady's eyes resembled that of a v _____ e. (*large bird related to be eagle*)

【解答】 1. devolve 2. trudge 3. calligraphy 4. bankrupt
 5. cavern 6. fishery 7. ulterior 8. cucumber
 9. duel 10. vulture

Exercise 18. 8 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词：

- _____ 1. (A)hustle (B)bustle (C)jostle (D)castle
 _____ 2. (A)disobedient (B)naughty (C)tributary (D)mischiefous
 _____ 3. (A)belabor (B)thrash (C)beat (D)devolve
 _____ 4. (A)tatoo (B)plight (C)adversity (D)predicament
 _____ 5. (A)scoff (B)loom (C)sneer (D)jeer
 _____ 6. (A)insinuate (B)trudge (C) allude (D)imply
 _____ 7. (A)levy (B)straggle (C)roam (D)wander
 _____ 8. (A)domineering (B)autocratic (C)ulterior (D)high-handed
 _____ 9. (A)undo (B)stun (C)cancel (D)reverse
 _____ 10(A)fly (B)flutter (C)flit (D)fret

【解答】 1. D 2. C 3. D 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. D

Exercise 18.9 从下列生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：

VOCABULARY LIST

| | | | |
|--------|---------------|------------|-------------|
| gust | circumference | auction | anesthetics |
| rattle | ingratiate | graft | allude |
| fret | belabored | prostrated | scoffed |

1. At a(an) _____ each thing is sold to the person who offers the most money for it.
2. The _____ of the earth is nearly 25, 000 miles at the equator.
3. Some politicians tried to _____ rich or influential people so as to get more supporters.
4. After the terrible hurricane, we saw many trees _____ on the sidewalk.
5. The girl _____ at his proposal of marriage, but she married him later.
6. No one has been able to _____ together trees belonging to quite distant families.
7. Do not _____ at train's delay; it will arrive here soon.
8. As his poor donkey became exhausted under the heavy load, the man _____ him soundly.
9. Doctors often use _____ before performing surgical operations so that patients will not feel pain.
10. Do not ask him about his failure; do not even _____ to it.

【解答】 1. auction 2. circumference 3. ingratiate 4. prostrated
 5. scoffed 6. graft 7. fret 8. belabored 9. anesthetics
 10. allude

LESSON 19

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. We can seldom see the *cavalry* in modern battlefields. It has been replaced by the _____.
 (A)infantry (B) armor (C) artillery

2. He _____ three candles with a single *puff*.
 (A)picked up (B) took away (C) blew out

3. The *surname* of John W. Smith is _____.
 (A)John (B) W. (C) smith

4. The actress wore a black *wig* _____.
 (A)over her blond hair (B)around her slender waist
 (C)over her shoulders

5. The boys made *snares* to _____.
 (A)collect stamps (B)catch rabbits
 (C)cross the river

△解 答 △

1. B 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. B

《第一部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|--|
| ambush
[æmbuʃ]
<i>n.</i> 1. 伏兵 | 1. a surprise attack from a place of hiding | The soldiers lay in <i>ambush</i> , waiting for the signal to open fire. 士兵布下伏兵，等待开火的信号。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|--|
| v. 2. 埋伏

brag (bræg)
v. 夸大；吹牛 | 2. put soldiers in-hiding for a surprise attack

praise oneself or what one has; boast; vaunt | The major <i>ambushed</i> his troops in the woods on both sides of the road. 少校把他的部队埋伏在马路两旁的树丛中。

He is always <i>bragging</i> about what he can do with a car. 他总是吹牛他对车子有多在行。 |
| cleanse (klenz)
v. 使清洁 | make clean by chemical or other technical processes | Be sure that you <i>cleanse</i> the wound before bandaging it. 在你包扎伤口之前，确定已消毒清洁好了。 |
| discourse
(dis'kɔ:s)
n. 演讲；论文 | an orderly expression of ideas in speech or writing | The professor will deliver a <i>discourse</i> on the poetic style of John Keats. 那位教授将发表有关济慈的诗风的演讲。 |
| foxhole
('fɔks,həul)
n. (军)散兵坑 | a hole in the ground from which one or two soldiers fire at the enemy | In World War I the general made it a point of pride to dig his own <i>foxhole</i> . 第二次世界大战时，那位将军骄傲地强调他自己挖散兵坑。 |
| inflammation
(,inflə'meɪʃən)
n. 发炎；炎症 | a painful, hot, red swelling of some part of the body | The <i>inflammation</i> of his knee made it difficult for him to walk. 他的膝盖发炎使他走路困难。 |
| lever
('livə; 美 'levə)
n. 杠杆 | a bar used for lifting something heavy | The huge stone is so heavy that we cannot move it without a <i>lever</i> . 那块巨石是如此重，我们如果不使用杠杆就无法移动它。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|--|
| notation
[nou'teɪʃən]
<i>n.</i> 科学或艺术方面所使用的一套符号 | a system of signs and symbols used in the sciences or arts | In arithmetic we use the Arabic <i>notation</i> (1, 2, 3, and so on) or sometimes the Roman <i>notation</i> (I, II, III, and so on). 在算术方面我们用阿拉伯符号(1, 2, 3, 等), 或有时用罗马符号(I, II, III, 等)。 |
| ransom
['rænsəm]
<i>n.</i> 赎金; 赎回 | a price paid or demanded before a captive is set free | A large <i>ransom</i> was asked for the safe return of the child. 一笔庞大的赎金被要求作为小孩安全归来的费用。 |
| sop [sɒp]
<i>v.</i> 浸于液体中 | dip or soak | He <i>sopped</i> a piece of bread in milk; it was too crisp to eat. 他把一片面包浸于水中; 它太干了无法入口。 |
| tingle ['tinggl]
<i>v.</i> 有刺痛之感 | have a pricking, stinging feeling | His cheek <i>tingled</i> from the slap she had give him. 她给他一个耳光令他的脸颊有刺痛之感。 |

Exercise 19. 1 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The priest delivered a long _____ upon the evils of untruthfulness.
2. The two scientists use different _____ for the same objects.
3. The room is too dirty. Please _____ the room with soap and water.
4. As the enemy's artillery began to fire, the soldiers jumped into their _____.
5. Her ears _____ with cold after ice-skating for an hour.

【解答】 1. discourse 2. notation 3. cleanse 4. foxholes 5. tingling

~~~~~(第二部分)~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| armament
[ə;mə'mənt]
<i>n.</i> 兵力；军势 | war equipment and supplies; equipment of the armed forces | A large percentage of the budget is for armaments . 预算的绝大部分是为国防。 |
| brunch [brʌntʃ]
<i>n.</i> 早午餐 | a combination of breakfast and lunch | On Sunday she gets up late in the morning and has a brunch around 10:30星期天她起得很晚，在十点半左右吃早午餐。 |
| coffin ('kɔfin)
<i>n.</i> 棺；柩 | a box into which a dead person is put to be buried; casket | His coffin was laid to rest in a deep grave. 他的棺柩被安放在一个深的墓穴中。 |
| envision
(in'vezən)
<i>v.</i> 预想；想象 | see in the mind as a future possibility; envisage | The mother envisioned her little girl as a prima ballerina. 那母亲想象她的小女儿是一个芭蕾舞团的首席女星。 |
| gangster
[gæŋstə]
<i>n.</i> 罪徒；匪盗 | a member of a gang of criminals or rogues | The gangster who had taken part in the robbery was arrested by the police. 那参加抢劫的盗匪被警方逮捕了。 |
| illegible
(i'ledʒəbl)
<i>adj.</i> (字迹)难读 | very hard or impossible to read; not legible | The ink had faded so that many words were illegible . 墨水褪色了，所以许多词不易辨认了。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|--|
| malcontent
[mælkən'tent]
<i>n.</i> 不平者；不满者 | a discontented or rebellious person | The rebellion was started by some <i>malcontents</i> who had been dissatisfied with the policy. 叛变起于一些向来对政策不满的人。 |
| pavilion
[pə'velɪən]
<i>n.</i> (运动会的)休息处；天幕 | a large tent or a light building used for shelter or pleasure | We will take a rest in the <i>pavilion</i> until the game starts. 我们将在休息处休息一下，直到比赛开始。 |
| shroud [ʃraʊd]
<i>n.</i> 帷；寿衣 | something that covers or conceals; a cloth to be wrapped round a corpse | The prisoners escaped out of the jail under the <i>shroud</i> of night. 囚犯在黑夜逃离监狱。 |
| spurt [spə:t]
<i>v.</i> 喷出；涌出 | flow out suddenly or violently; gush; spout; squirt | The room soon filled with the water <i>spouting</i> from the broken pipe. 水管破裂后房间内顿时充满了水。 |
| varnish [və:nɪʃ]
<i>n.</i> 油漆 | liquid which gives a clear, hard, shiny surface | He put <i>varnish</i> on the table top to protect it, but somebody has scratched it. 他把桌面漆油漆以保护它，但有人在上面乱画。 |

Exercise 19. 2 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. The architect looked at the plan and _____ the finished house.
2. They prayed to God for the dead before lowering the _____ into the grave.
3. The strike was caused by a few _____ who felt they had been ignored when the promotions were made.

4. Do not put the hot plate on the table; it may spoil the _____ on it.
5. Blood will _____ out from the wound when the artery is cut off.

【解答】 1. envisioned 2. coffin 3. malcontents 4. varnish 5. spurt

~~~~~  
《第三部分》  
~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|--|
| ballad [ˈbæləd]
<i>n.</i> 民歌；歌谣 | a poem or song
that tells a story;
a popular love
song | Many old ballads are sung to
new words. 许多古老的民歌代以
新词来唱。 |
| butt [bʌt]
<i>n.</i> 1粗大之一端
<i>v.</i> 2. 撞；以砍或
角撞 | 1. the thicker end
of anything; the
end that is left

2. push or hit
with the head or
horns | The butt of pipe stuck out from
the wall where the sink had been
removed. 水管粗大的一端，从水槽
给移走了的那片墙突出来。

The goat butted the boy and
knocked him down. 山羊用角撞那
男孩，把他弄倒。 |
| consul [kənˈsəl]
<i>n.</i> 领事 | an official who
protects or helps
his citizen in a
foreign country | You will have to call the consul
before your passport is expired.
在你的护照期满之前得打电话给领
事。 |
| enshrine
(ɪn'ʃraɪn)
<i>v.</i> 铭记 | enclose in a
shrine; keep sa-
cred; cherish | Memories of happier days were
enshrined in the old man's heart.
老人心中铭记着快乐时光。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|-------------------------------|---|---|
| gobble (ˈgobl) | eat fast and greedily; gulp; devour | He <i>gobbled</i> the ice cream so fast that he got a headache. 他快速大口的吃冰淇淋,所以头痛了。 |
| harangue
[həˈræŋ] | a loud or long speech; a noisy speech; tirade | We had to listen to a long <i>harangue</i> about our own shortcomings. 我们必须去听一有关我们缺点的长篇大论。 |
| mow
(mou; 美 mau) | cut down with a machine or a scythe | He spent the whole afternoon <i>mowing</i> the grass in the back yard. 他花整个下午的时间来割后院的草坪。 |
| pilgrim (ˈpilgrɪm) | one who travels to a holy place for religious purpose | In the Middle Ages, many people used to go as <i>pilgrims</i> to Jerusalem and to other holy places in Europe. 中古时期许多人常到耶路撒冷或其它欧洲宗教圣地去朝拜。 |
| shear (ʃɪə) | remove from by cutting; cut off | The farmers <i>sheared</i> the wool from the sheep. 农夫从羊身上剪羊毛。 |
| strangle
(ˈstræŋgl) | kill by pressing the throat; choke; stifle | He <i>strangled</i> her to death by a cord put around her neck. 他用细绳绕在她的脖子上,将她勒死。 |
| walnut (ˈwɔ:nət) | a large, round, eatable nut | The kernel of the <i>walnut</i> is eaten by itself or used in cakes or cookies. 核桃仁可以食用,或掺进蛋糕、饼干中食用。 |

Exercise 19.3 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The _____ who came from various countries in Europe entered the church to pray.
2. Let me show you how to strike the enemy with the _____ of your rifle.
3. The old man sang _____ of the clan's heroes, often to the tune of a folk song.
4. He joined the army two months ago. When I met him yesterday he looked very strange with his closely _____ head.
5. His high, stiff collar was tight that it was almost _____ his neck.

【解答】 1. pilgrims 2. butt 3. ballads 4. sheared(shorn)
5. strangling

《第四部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|---|
| beaver ('bi:və)
<i>n. 海狸</i> | an animal with soft fur and feet adapted to swimming | <i>Beavers</i> are noted for their skill in building dams across streams.
海狸以会在溪中筑水坝而闻名。 |
| cavalry ('kævəlri)
<i>n. 骑兵</i> | soldiers who fight on horseback | The <i>cavalry</i> is much superior in mobility to the infantry. 骑兵的机动性远优于步兵。 |
| creak (krɪ:k)
<i>n. 作碾轧声</i> | make a sharp, high sound; squeak; grate | The floor <i>creaked</i> as he stepped on a loose board. 当他踩到了一块松板子时, 地板吱吱作响。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---------------------------------------|---|---|
| fir (fə:)
n. 枫树 | an evergreen tree belonging to the pine family | The <i>fir</i> remains green all year and its needles are distributed evenly around the branch. 枫树终年常绿,它的针状叶均匀地长在树枝上。 |
| hangar ('hæŋə)
n. 飞机库 | a garage for airplanes | During the heavy storm, airplanes should be kept in the <i>hangar</i> . 暴风雨来临时,飞机应被保存在飞机库中。 |
| kernel ('kə:nl)
n. 中心;要点;核仁 | the soft part of a seed; core; nucleus | The <i>kernel</i> of the argument is who discovered the islands first. 争执的要点是谁最先发现了那群岛。 |
| measles ('mi:zlz)
n. 麻疹 | a contagious disease of infants caused by virus | What seems to be a cold often turns out to be the begining of <i>measles</i> . 看似感冒的症状,结果常常是麻疹的开始。 |
| puff (pʌf)
n. 吹;喷 | a short, quick blast of air, smoke, etc. | With a huge <i>puff</i> the balloon was blown up and then suddenly burst. 猛烈的吹气后,汽球膨胀起来,突然又破掉了。 |
| sleet (sli:t)
n. 霰 | partly frozen rain; snow mixed with rain | <i>Sleet</i> forms when rain falls through a layer of cold air. 当雨穿过一层冷空气便成霰。 |
| surname ('sə:nneɪm)
n. 姓 | a last name; family name | A woman, after marriage, usually drops her <i>surname</i> and takes that of her husband. 女人结婚后,经常省去原来的姓而冠上夫姓。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| wig [wig]
n. 假发 | head-covering of false hair | Women often wear <i>wigs</i> over their real hair for beauty or fashion. 女人常为了漂亮和赶流行而戴假发。 |

Exercise 19.4 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Would you please repair the door? It always _____ whenever I open it.
2. This beautiful Christmas tree was made of a small _____.
3. The _____ of his religious teaching is love for all men.
4. It is very dangerous to drive a car as the road is covered with _____.
5. _____ is much more common in children than in grown-ups.

【解答】 1. creaks 2. fir 3. kernel 4. sleet 5. measles

~~~~~《第五部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|------------------------------|---|---|
| bleach [blɪ:tʃ]
v. 去色;漂白 | make white by using chemicals or exposing to sunlight | <i>Bleached</i> bones lay on the hot sands of the desert. 白骨躺在炎热的沙漠中。 |
| chariot [tʃærɪət]
n. 四轮马车 | a two-wheeled carriage pulled by horses | <i>Chariots</i> were used in ancient times for fighting, racing, and in processions. 古时四轮马车常用于打仗、赛马和行进。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|---|
| crutch (krʌtʃ)
<i>n.</i> 拐杖 | a support to help a lame person walk | He has been crippled since he broke his leg. Now he can't walk without a pair of <i>crutches</i> .
他断了脚就跛了，现在走路一定要用拐杖。 |
| flirt (flə:t)
<i>n.</i> 调情；玩弄 | play at love; make love without meaning it | She <i>flirted</i> with many men but loved only one. 她和许多男子调情，却只爱一个。 |
| gull (gʌl)
<i>n.</i> 鸥 | a graceful seabird living on or near sea | They were very pleased to see some <i>gulls</i> flying in the sky, full of hope that they would soon get ashore. 他们很高兴能看到海鸥在天空飞翔，因为这表示他们很有希望要靠岸了。 |
| kit (kit)
<i>n.</i> 装备 | a set of tools, instruments, supplies, etc. | When I bought a new car, a <i>kit</i> of tools came with it. 我买了一辆新车附带着一套工具箱。 |
| morsel ('mɔ:səl)
<i>n.</i> 一口；少量 | a small bite; a small quantity; fragment; bit | The hungry children did not leave a <i>morsel</i> of food on their plates. 饥饿的孩子们把盘内的食物吃得精光。 |
| prototype
('prau:tətaip)
<i>n.</i> 原型 | the first or primary type anything; original or model | The strange mechanical device is the <i>prototype</i> of modern cars. 这奇怪的机械装置是现代汽车的原型。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|--|
| snare [sneə]
n. 陷阱 | a trap for catching an animal | They set a <i>snare</i> for rabbits on the hill, but unfortunately a wild cat was caught by it. 他们在小山上设了一个陷阱抓野兔, 不幸地却抓了一只野猫。 |
| trigger ['trɪgə]
1. n.扳机
2. v.引起;促使 | 1. a device which, when pressed, starts an action | When you squeeze the <i>trigger</i> , a round or rounds of ammunition are fired. 当你紧按扳机,一发或几发子弹就射出了。 |
| | 2. set off; start; initiate | When the burglar tripped the wire it <i>triggered</i> an alarm. 当窃贼绊到铁丝网,引起警铃大作。 |
| weir [wɪə]
n. 堤;水坝 | a small dam or wall erected across a river | The <i>weir</i> across the river stops or controls the flow of the river above it. 河上的坝可以制止或控制上面河水的流量。 |

Exercise 19.5 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The hollowed log used by primitive people is the _____ of the modern ship.
2. The girl was very hungry, and consumed the oatmeal to the last _____.
3. She doesn't like going parties because her husband always _____ with every girl in the room.
4. The sun will _____ the cloth and make it whiter.
5. Hold your breath while squeezing the _____, or you cannot hit the target.

【解答】 1. prototype 2. morsel 3. flirts 4. bleach 5. trigger

成 果 测 验

Exercise 19. 6 由第二栏中选出第一栏各词的正确词意:

COLUMN I

COLUMN II

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| _____ 1. consul | (A) a support to help a lame person walk |
| _____ 2. mow | (B) snow mixed with rain |
| _____ 3. chariot | (C) a combination of breakfast and lunch |
| _____ 4. hangar | (D) to eat fast and greedily |
| _____ 5. sleet | (E) a graceful seabird |
| _____ 6. armament | (F) a two-wheeled carriage pulled by horses |
| _____ 7. gull | (G) to cut down a machine |
| _____ 8. crutch | (H) war equipment and supplies |
| _____ 9. brunch | (I) a garage for airplanes |
| _____ 10. gobble | (J) an official who protects or helps his citizens in a foreign country |

【解答】 1. J 2. G 3. F 4. I 5. B 6. H 7. E 8. A 9. C 10. D

Exercise 19. 7 完整拼出句中所欠缺的单词, 句后括号内为该词词意:

1. You can move the huge stone by using only a short l ____ r.
(bar used for lifting something heavy).
2. It is unpleasant to hear one b ____ g about his own abilities, achievements, or possessions. (praise oneself)

3. The hinges on the door c _____ k; they need oiling. (*make a sharp, high sound*)
4. The angry senator arose and delivered a h _____ e. (*long, loud speech*)
5. He wouldn't do such silly things if he had a m _____ l of sense. (*small quantity; bit*)
6. The detective used marked money as a s _____ e for the thief. (*trap*)
7. They built a w _____ r in order to convey the stream to the mill. (*small dam*)
8. The soldier slowly pressed the t _____ r to shoot the rifle. (*device which, when pressed, causes firing*)
9. The boy's handwriting was so bad that his letter to his mother was i _____ e. (*impossible to read*)
10. The i _____ n of her elbow made it impossible for her to swim. (*painful, hot, red swelling*)

【解答】 1. lever 2. brag 3. creak 4. harangue 5. morsel 6. snare
7. weir 8. trigger 9. illegible 10. inflammation

Exercise 19.8 找出一个与其它三个不相关的词:

- _____ 1. (A)gobble (B)bleach (C)devour (D)gulp
- _____ 2. (A)weir (B)core (C)nucleus (D)kernel
- _____ 3. (A)clarify (B)cleanse (C)purify (D)pledge
- _____ 4. (A)drag (B)sop (C)dip (D)soak
- _____ 5. (A)stifle (B)choke (C)flirt (D)strangle
- _____ 6. (A)brag (B)vaunt (C)fawn (D)boast

- _____ 7. (A)tingle (B)shear (C)prick (D)sting
 _____ 8. (A)creak (B)squeak (C)grate (D)allot
 _____ 9. (A)spout (B)squat (C)squirt (D)spurt
 _____ 10.(A)rogue (B)gangster (C)villain (D)ballad

【解答】 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. C 6. C 7. B 8. D 9. B 10. D

Exercise 19. 9 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词, 填入空格内:

VOCABULARY LIST

| | | | |
|-----------|-----------|--------|------------|
| ransom | measles | butt | ambush |
| prototype | notation | shroud | enshrined |
| levied | strangled | honked | envisioned |

1. The crude craft which the Wright brothers made in 1903 was the _____ of the modern airplane.
2. The basic human rights are _____ in the constitution.
3. Many people went to America because they _____ a better future there for themselves and their children.
4. Indians often trapped their enemies by _____, instead of meeting them in open battle.
5. After smoking do not throw away the _____ on the street; you will be heavily fined.
6. Music has a special system of _____, and so does chemistry.
7. The sufferer of _____ usually has a high fever and small red spots on the skin.
8. She was almost _____ on a piece of meat that caught in her throat.
9. The kidnappers asked a large _____ for the return of the little girl.

10. The enemy seems to attack our defense positions tonight under the _____ of darkness.

- 【解答】 1. prototype 2. enshrined 3. envisioned 4. ambush
5. butt 6. notation 7. measles 8. strangled 9. ransom
10. shroud

本书由台湾学习出版公司
授权海南(三环)出版社在
大陆出版,翻印必究。

LESSON 20

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

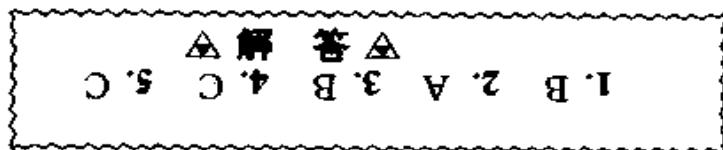
1. The court *annulled* the marriage because it was _____.
 (A)legitimate (B)illegal (C)incomplete

2. The *excess* of imports over exports will _____ national economy.
 (A)harm (B)stabilize (C)boost

3. It is considered to be _____ to read somebody else's *diary*.
 (A)generous (B)impolite (C)dangerous

4. He *augmented* his wages by _____ his free time.
 (A)wasting (B)enlarging (C)working in

5. _____ persons are *averse* to punishing people.
 (A)Critical (B)Indifferent (C)Generous



(第一部分)

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|---|
| access (æk'ses)
n. 接近、使用权；通路 | the right or privilege to approach, enter, or use; entrance; approach | The students have access to the library only in the afternoon. 学生们只有在下午可使用图书馆。 |
| excess (ik'ses)
n. 过量 | more than enough; surplus; overabundance | Last year we had several floods; we had an excess of rain. 去年有几次洪水，我们的雨水过多了。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|--|
| adapt (ə'dæpt)
<i>v. 使适合；使适应</i> | make suitable; adjust; fit | Long ago Eskimos learned how to adapt to the cold to live in the Arctic Region. 很久以前爱斯基摩人学习如何去适应严寒,以住在北极地区。 |
| adopt (ə'dɔpt)
<i>v. 采用；采纳</i> | take as one's own; accept formally | The club adopted a new set of rules concerning its membership. 那俱乐部采用一套新的会员资格规定。 |
| adverse ('ædvrə:s)
<i>adj. 有敌意的；反对</i> | unfriendly in purpose; hostile; injurious | His adverse criticism didn't upset me, but encouraged me. 他恶意的批评并未使我气馁,相反地,反而激励我。 |
| averse (ə've:s)
<i>adj. 不愿意的；反对的</i> | not liking; opposed; unwilling | My parents are averse to our picnic plan; they don't approve of it. 我的双亲反对我们的野餐计划,他们不同意这计划。 |
| affect (ə'fekt)
<i>v. 影响</i> | have an effect upon; influence; change | The government decision whether to continue the project will affect the future of our national economy. 是否继续进行那项计划的政府决定,会影响我们国家未来的经济。 |
| effect (i'fekt)
<i>n. 结果</i> | something made to happen by a person or thing; result; consequence | I have warned him to drive slowly several times, but it doesn't have any effect at all. 我好几次警告他开慢一点,可是一点也没用。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| affection
[æfek'seʃən]
<i>n.</i> 虚饰；假装 | an artificial way of talking or acting; show; pretense | The new secretary is sincere and quite without <i>affection</i> . 那位新秘书很真诚，且相当地不做作。 |
| affection
[ə'fekʃən]
<i>n.</i> 爱 | gentle, lasting love as of a parent's for its child; fondness tenderness | His gentleness and kind ways increased his colleagues' <i>affection</i> for him. 他温柔且慈祥的态度增加了同事们对他的好感。 |

Exercise 20.1 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. The _____ of losses over profits will ruin the business.
(A)access (B)excess
2. The man _____ an old car engine to drive his boat.
(A)adapted (B)adopted
3. An unbalanced diet has an _____ effect upon health.
(A)adverse (B)averse
4. This medicine will have a miraculous _____ on you.
(A)affect (B)effect
5. Nothing is greater than mothers' _____ for their children.
(A)affectionate (B)affection

【解答】 1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. B

~~~~~《第二部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|--|
| allusion
[ə'lju:ʒən]
<i>n.</i> 间接提及；暗示 | indirect reference; hint; suggestion; insinuation | The preacher likes to make an allusion to Homer while preaching. 那牧师在传道时喜欢间接提到荷马。 |
| illusion [ilju:ʒən]
<i>n.</i> 错觉；幻象 | a false impression; misleading appearance | The white walls create the illusion that the room is very large. 白色的墙壁制造错觉，好象房间很大。 |
| annual [ə'nenjuəl]
<i>adj.</i> 一年一次的 | coming once a year; living only one year or season | My birthday party is the biggest annual event of my family. 我的生日舞会是我家一年一度最盛大的事。 |
| annul [ə'nʌl]
<i>v.</i> 取消；宣告作废 | make void; cancel; nullify | The judge annulled the contract because one of the signers was too young. 由于签署人中有一位年纪太轻，法官宣告这个合同无效。 |
| appraise [ə'preɪz]
<i>v.</i> 估价；评价 | estimate the value, amount, quality, or merit of; judge; rate | The couple appraised the house carefully before offering to buy it. 那对夫妻在出价买那房子之前仔细地估价。 |
| apprise [ə'praɪz]
<i>v.</i> 报告；通知 | give notice to; inform; notify | The club members were immediately apprised of his change of plans. 俱乐部的会员们很快地注意到他计划的改变。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|---|
| argument
(ə:gju:mənt)
<i>n.</i> 辩论;争论 | a discussion by persons who disagree; dispute; debate | We should try to settle the matter by <i>argument</i> , not by fighting. 我们该试图以辩论来解决这件事,而不是打架。 |
| augment
(ɔ:g'mənt)
<i>n.</i> 增大;增加 | make greater in size, number, amount, or degree; enlarge; increase | The king <i>augmented</i> his power by taking over rights that had belonged to the nobles. 国王接收贵族们的权力,以扩张他的权力。 |
| assure (ə'sjuə)
<i>v.</i> 使相信,
使确信 | tell positively or confidently; guarantee; convince | The man <i>assured</i> himself that the bridge was safe before crossing it. 在过桥前那人先确定那座桥是安全的。 |
| insure (in'sjuə)
<i>v.</i> 1. 投保
2. 使确实 | 1. guard against loss or harm
2. make sure; ensure | He <i>insured</i> his car against accident, theft, and fire. 他给车子保意外险、失窃险和火险。
Don't forget to check your work to <i>insure</i> its accuracy. 不要忘记检查你的工作,以确认无误。 |

Exercise 20. 2 从第二部分中选出最适当的单词,填入空格内:

- It was an _____ caused by the dim lights that made me think I saw a man in the shadows.
 (A)allusion (B)illusion
- An _____ plant lives only one year or season.
 (A)annual (B)annul
- We were _____ that they would arrive before noon.
 (A)appraised (B)apprised
- His strong _____ persuaded us to accept his conclusions.

(A)arguments (B)augments

5. After the fire, the captain of the ship _____ the passengers that there was no more danger.

(A)assured (B)insured

【解答】

1. B

2. A

3. B

4. A

5. A

~~~~~《第三部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|--|
| bandage
[ˈbændɪdʒ]
<i>n. 绷带</i> | a strip of cloth used in binding up and dressing a wound | The doctor tied up the patient's broken ankle with a bandage . 医生用绷带把病人摔断的脚踝包起来。 |
| bondage
[ˈbəndɪdʒ]
<i>n. 奴役;囚禁</i> | lack of freedom; slavery; servitude | They seem to love bondage more than liberty. 他们好象爱奴役胜过自由。 |
| carton [ˈka:tən]
<i>n. 用纸盒包装</i> | a box made of cardboard or pasteboard | Pack the books in a small carton to carry it easily. 把书用小纸盒包起来以易于携带。 |
| cartoon [kɑ:'tu:n]
<i>n. 漫画</i> | a drawing of persons, things, or events in an amusing way | Political cartoons often represent the U.S. as a tall man with chin whiskers, called Uncle sam. 政治性的漫画通常以一个下颚有胡子叫山姆叔叔的高大男人代表美国。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| censor [ˈsenso] | 1. a person who examines books, plays, letters, etc, to prohibit what seems objectionable | The novel was banned by the censor as likely to stir up suspicion of the government among the readers. 那本小说被检查员查禁,因为它会煽动读者对政府的怀疑。 |
| | 2. 检查
2. prohibit, suppress, or remove allegedly objectionable material | Every dictator censors the newspapers in his country. 每个独裁者在他的国家内都会检查报纸。 |
| censure [ˈsenʃə] | reprimand; blame; denounce | The principal of the school censured the students for their rude behavior. 校长指责学生们无礼的行为。 |
| collision
[kə'lizhən] | a violent rushing against; clash; conflict | Many people were killed in the collision between the bus and the car. 巴士和汽车相撞,许多人丧失了生命。 |
| collusion
[kə'lju:ʒən] | a secret agreement or some wrong or harmful purpose; conspiracy
a close friend | The leaders of the collusion against the government were caught and punished. 阴谋反对政府的领导者被捉到且被惩罚。 |
| confidant
[kənfi'dænt] | a close friend | I have only one confidant to whom I can tell my secrets. 我只有一个可以诉说秘密的知己。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---------------------------------|--|
| confident
('kɔnfɪdənt)
<i>adj.</i> 确信的 | firmly believing; certain; sure | The doctor felt <i>confident</i> that his patient would recover from pneumonia. 那医生确信他的病人的肺炎会康复。 |

Exercise 20.3 从第三部分中选出最适当的单词, 填入空格内:

1. According to the Bible, Moses led Israelites out of _____ from Egypt.
(A)bandage (B)bondage
2. Sir Max Beerborn made _____ of many prominent politicians, artists, and writers.
(A)cartons (B)cartoons
3. The employer _____ him for neglecting his work.
(A)censored (B)censured
4. There was a _____ of interests on how to spend the club's money.
(A)collision (B)collusion
5. The politician spoke to the voters in a _____ voice.
(A)confidant (B)confident

【解答】 1. B 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. B

《第四部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| consul ('kɔnsəl)
<i>n.</i> 领事 | a foreign-based government official below the rank of ambassador | I am Swedish. Is there a Swedish <i>consul</i> in Omaha? 我是瑞典人。俄马哈有没有瑞典领事? |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|--|
| council[ˈkaunsil]
<i>n.</i> 会议 | a group of people organized to deliberate or rule; meeting; conference; assembly | The <i>council</i> of ministers advised the king to dismiss the general. 内阁忠告国王开除那个将军。 |
| counsel[ˈkaunsəl]
<i>n.</i> 1. 劝告; 忠告
2. 律师或法律顾问 | 1. advice; recommendation; opinion
2. a lawyer or adviser | The young man refused to listen to the old man's <i>counsel</i> . 年轻人拒听那老人的忠告。
The murderer suspect refused to answer the questions on the advice of his <i>counsel</i> . 谋杀的嫌疑犯因其律师的建议而拒绝答复问题。 |
| dairy[ˈdeəri]
<i>n.</i> 乳牛场 | a farm or barn where milk cows are kept; a place where milk and milk products are prepared and sold | The Hopkinsses run the biggest <i>dairy</i> farm in the state of Arizona. 霍布金斯家族经营亚利桑那州最大的牛场。 |
| diary[ˈdaɪəri]
<i>n.</i> 日记 | a daily record or journal | It is very rewarding to keep a <i>diary</i> of daily happenings. 写日记记下每天发生的事是很有用的。 |
| decease[di'se:s]
<i>n.</i> 死亡 | an act or fact of dying; death | Upon his <i>decease</i> all his properties passed to his wife. 他死后所有的财产过继给太太。 |
| disease[di'zi:z]
<i>n.</i> 疾病 | sickness; illness | Measles and chicken pox are two <i>diseases</i> of childhood. 麻疹和水痘是两种儿童疾病。 |

第二十

十九

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|---|
| decent (dɪ:snt)
<i>adj.</i> 适合 | suitable; respectable; socially acceptable | It is not <i>decent</i> to laugh at a crippled person. 嘲笑一个跛脚的人是不对的。 |
| descent (di'sent)
<i>n.</i> 降下; 降落 | coming down from a higher to a lower place | The road makes a sharp <i>descent</i> just around the corner. 那条路在转角处造成一陡峻的斜坡。 |
| dissent (di'sent)
<i>v.</i> 1. 不同意
2. 异议 | 1. differ; disagree
2. difference of opinion; disagreement | The three justices <i>dissented</i> from the Supreme Court's decision. 那三位法官不同意最高法庭的决定。
<i>Dissent</i> among the senior members was the main cause of the disintegration of the club. 资深会员间的歧见是造成俱乐部分裂的主要原因。 |

Exercise 20.4 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. A _____ looks after the business interests of his own country and protects citizens of his country who are traveling or living there.
(A) counsel (B) consul (C) council
2. My family buys milk and ice cream at a local _____.
(A) dairy (B) diary
3. Many _____ are caused by bacteria; cleanliness helps prevent them.
(A) deceases (B) diseases
4. The _____ of the balloon was more rapid than its rise had been.
(A) decent (B) descent (C) dissent

【解答】 1. B 2. A 3. B 4. B

成果测验

Exercise 20.5 由第二栏中选出第一栏各词的正确词意：

COLUMN I

COLUMN II

- | | |
|-------------|--|
| 1. access | (A) coming down from a higher to a lower place |
| 2. excess | (B) the right to enter |
| 3. adverse | (C) prohibit allegedly objectionable material |
| 4. averse | (D) more than enough |
| 5. appraise | (E) estimate the value of |
| 6. apprise | (F) not liking |
| 7. censor | (G) unfriendly in purpose; injurious |
| 8. censure | (H) reprimand; blame |
| 9. descent | (I) difference of opinion |
| 10. dissent | (J) give notice to |

【解答】 1. B 2. D 3. G 4. F 5. E 6. J 7. C 8. H 9. A 10. I

Exercise 20.6 阅读下面的句子，选出句中斜体词所代表的词意：

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Most animals easily <i>adjust</i> themselves to the weather and surroundings. | (A) adapt (B) adopt |
| 2. The disease <i>influenced</i> his mind so that he lost his memory completely. | (A) affected (B) effected |
| 3. It's not good to make a personal <i>insinuation</i> to anyone. | (A) allusion (B) illusion |
| 4. A teacher should be able to <i>estimate</i> ability and achievement in | |

students.

- (A) appraise (B) apprise

5. It is quite certain that a *clash* with congress will ruin the government's plans.

- (A) collision (B) collusion

【解答】

1. A 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. A

Exercise 20.7 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的单词

1. cause and effect

- (A) reason (B) consequence (C) condition (D) influence

2. decent suit

- (A) respectable (B) tight (C) loose (D) untidy

3. the Chinese consul

- (A) resident (B) close friend
(C) lawyer (D) foreign-based official

4. plaintiff's counsel

- (A) witness (B) lawyer (C) judge (D) prosecutor

5. confident voice

- (A) faint (B) loud (C) certain (D) clear

6. candy carton

- (A) box (B) drawing (C) taste (D) sweetness

7. adopt children

- (A) educate (B) take as one's own
(C) adjust (D) control the number of

8. adverse conditions

- (A) unfavorable (B) suitable (C) acceptable (D) regretful

9. mother's affection

- (A)prejudice (B)fondness (C)chore (D)understanding

10. optical illusion

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| (A)indirect suggestion | (B)distant view |
| (C)sudden disturbance | (D)false impression |

【解答】 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. A 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. D

Exercise 20.8 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：

VOCABULARY LIST

| | | | |
|-----------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| collusion | adapt | argument | illusion |
| access | decease | consul | affection |
| insure | confidant | adverse | apprised |

1. The general's sudden _____ left the army without a leader.
2. It's not easy to approach the building. The only _____ to that building is along that muddy track.
3. One of the striking facts of nature is the ability of living things to _____ themselves to any environment on earth.
4. I believe judge is biased against us. He gave us a (an) _____ decision on the case.
5. Her roughness is but a (an) _____; she is really a quiet, gentle girl.
6. John told me that the teacher had _____ us there would be a test on Monday.
7. He won the _____ against the other members of the association by producing figures to prove his point.
8. When you mail a package with valuable items, it is safe to _____ it against theft and damage.
9. The two men made the _____ to steal the jewels and sell them to a jeweler in another country.

10. John talked about his personal matters with his _____.
~~~~~

- 【解答】 1. decease 2. access 3. adapt 4. adverse 5. affection  
6. apprised 7. argument 8. insure 9. collusion  
10. confidant
- ~~~~~

本书由台湾学习出版公司  
授权海南(三环)出版社在  
大陆出版,翻印必究。  
~~~~~

LESSON 21

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. The mechanic *disassembled* the car to _____ it.
 (A) buy (B) sell (C) repair
2. A *drought* of three months _____ the wheat.
 (A) ruined (B) helped (C) ripened
3. The boy gave an *ingenuous* account of his acts, _____ nothing.
 (A) discarding (B) telling (C) concealing
4. The abolitionists felt a *moral* responsibility to _____ the slaves.
 (A) capture (B) free (C) trade
5. The driver was *prosecuted* for his _____ driving.
 (A) skillful (B) careful (C) reckless

△解 答 △

1. C 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. C

~~~~~《第一部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                    | MEANING                | TYPICAL USE                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>desert</b> (d'zezət)<br><i>n.</i> 沙漠 | 1. an arid area        | Lawrence rode a camel across the <i>desert</i> on an exploring expedition. 劳伦斯骑着骆驼渡沙漠, 从事探险。          |
| (dizə:t)<br><i>v.</i> 遗弃                | 2. abandon;<br>forsake | He had intended to <i>desert</i> his wife and children, but changed his mind. 他原本想要遗弃太太和孩子们, 但是改变了主意。 |

| WORD                                                       | MEANING                                                       | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>dessert</b> [di'zə:t]<br><i>n.</i> 餐后的甜点心               | a sweet course at the end of a meal                           | Strawberry pie is one of my most favorite <b>desserts</b> . 草莓是我最喜爱的餐后甜点之一。                                                |
| <b>disassemble</b><br>[,disə'sembl]<br><i>v.</i> 分解        | take apart; take to pieces                                    | Many students know how to <b>disassemble</b> the radio, but few know how to put it together. 很多学生知道如何去拆解收音机,却很少人知道如何去组合起来。 |
| <b>dissemble</b><br>[di'semb'l]<br><i>v.</i> 隐藏;伪装         | hide (one's true feelings, intentions, etc); disguise         | She tried to <b>dissemble</b> her anger with a smile on her face. 她试着面带微笑来掩饰她的怒气。                                          |
| <b>draught</b> , <b>draft</b><br>[dra:f't]<br><i>n.</i> 草稿 | the first rough written form of anything; a rough plan        | I've made a first <b>draught</b> of my speech for Friday, but it still needs a lot of work. 我已经拟定好星期五演说的草稿,但它仍需要许多修改的工作。   |
| <b>drought</b> [draut]<br><i>n.</i> 久旱                     | a long period of dry weather; continued lack of rain; dryness | The long <b>drought</b> has killed most of the crops in the fields. 久旱已使田里大部分的农作物枯死。                                       |
| <b>eligible</b> ['elidʒəbl]<br><i>adj.</i> 合适的;合格的         | suitable to be chosen; desirable; qualified.                  | She knows a lot of <b>eligible</b> young men who are all rich and attractive. 她认识很多合适的青年,都既富有又吸引人。                         |
| <b>illegible</b><br>[ɪ'ledʒəbl]<br><i>adj.</i> 难读的         | very hard or impossible to read; not legible                  | The ink had faded so that many words were <b>illegible</b> . 因墨水褪色了,许多字迹都很难读。                                              |

| WORD                                                | MEANING                                                  | TYPICAL USE                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>eminent</b><br>[ə'mɪnənt]<br><i>adj.</i> 闻名的；显赫的 | highly respected; well-known; distinguished; outstanding | Washington was <i>eminent</i> both as general and as president. 华盛顿不管是平民或是总统时都很有名。                  |
| <b>imminent</b><br>[ɪ'mіnənt]<br><i>adj.</i> 迫近的    | about to happen; impending                               | The scientist predicted that an earthquake was <i>imminent</i> in Tokyo area. 科学家预言有一场大地震即将发生在东京地区。 |

**Exercise 21. 1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

- Great sections of \_\_\_\_\_ in Arizona and California have been made into farmland by irrigation.  
(A)desert      (B)dessert
- Somehow he was able to \_\_\_\_\_ the radio but failed to reassemble it.  
(A)disassemble      (B)dissemble
- He made three different \_\_\_\_\_ of his report before he handed it in final form.  
(A)draughts      (B)droughts
- The old professor was looking for an \_\_\_\_\_ young man for his daughter.  
(A)eligible      (B)illegible
- Censure is the tax a man pays to the public for being \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A)eminent      (B)imminent

【解答】 1. A    2. A    3. A    4. A    5. A

## (第二部分)

| WORD                                                         | MEANING                                                                                      | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>exalt</b><br>[ɪg'zɔlt]<br>eg'zɔlt)<br><i>v.</i> 提升        | raise a person to<br>a high position;<br>elevate; promote                                    | The members <i>exalted</i> Mr. Smith<br>when they elected him president<br>of the association. 会员提升史密斯先生,选他为协会的会长。                                                           |
| <b>exult</b> [ɪg'zɔlt]<br><i>v.</i> 欢腾                       | rejoice greatly;<br>show delight; be<br>very glad                                            | All the people <i>exulted</i> to find<br>that our national team won the<br>gold medal in the International<br>Basketball Tournament. 当知道<br>我们的国家代表队在国际篮球赛中<br>赢得了金牌时,全民欢腾了。 |
| <b>ingenious</b><br>[ɪn'dʒi:njəs]<br><i>adj.</i> 设计精巧的       | skillful; clever;<br>inventive; clever-<br>ly made                                           | The trap made of an old tin can<br>and some wire is an <i>ingenious</i> de-<br>vice. 这个由旧罐头和金属丝所做<br>成的捕捉器,是一件精巧的装置。                                                         |
| <b>ingenuous</b><br>[ɪn'dʒenjuəs]<br><i>adj.</i> 天真的;<br>老实的 | frank and open;<br>sincere; simple                                                           | The <i>ingenuous</i> person had never<br>thought of being suspicious of<br>what others told him. 天真的人从<br>来不会怀疑他人告诉他的话。                                                      |
| <b>jealous</b> [dʒeləs]<br><i>adj.</i> 嫉妒的                   | fearful that a per-<br>son one loves<br>may love some-<br>one else; pos-<br>sessive; envious | When my little brother sees<br>mother holding the new baby, he<br>becomes <i>jealous</i> . 看到妈妈抱着刚<br>出生的小婴儿,我的小弟嫉妒了。                                                        |

| WORD                                             | MEANING                                                | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>zealous</b> [zeləs]<br><i>adj.</i> 热心的        | actively enthusiastic; eager; earnest; ardent; fervent | The clerk in the toy section of the department seems very <b>zealous</b> in pleasing the customers. 百货公司里玩具部门的售货员,似乎非常热心于取悦顾客。 |
| <b>material</b><br>[mə'tiəriəl]<br><i>n.</i> 材料  | anything of which something can be made                | The dress that Miss Lee was wearing at the party was made of synthetic <b>material</b> . 李小姐在舞会穿的那套礼服是由合成材料做成的。                |
| <b>materiel</b><br>[mə'tiəri'el]<br><i>n.</i> 军备 | supplies; military supplies; equipment.                | The statesman said the Iron Curtain countries had vast resources in manpower and <b>materiel</b> . 政治家说铁幕内的国家在人力和军备上均有大量资源。    |
| <b>moral</b> ['mɔ:rl]<br><i>adj.</i> 品行端正的       | good in character or conduct; right; just              | George Washington is known to be a <b>moral</b> and just man. 乔治·华盛顿以品行端正和公正闻名。                                                |
| <b>morale</b> [mɔ:r'ə:l]<br><i>n.</i> 士气         | a state of mind in terms of confidence and courage     | I am sure that we will win the battle; the <b>morale</b> of our troops is very high. 我相信我们会赢这场战役,我们的士气非常高昂。                    |

**Exercise 21. 2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- He was \_\_\_\_\_ to the most eminent position in the government.  
(A) exalted                   (B) exulted
- The \_\_\_\_\_ boy made a radio set for himself after reading the manual.  
(A) ingenious               (B) ingenuous
- The boys and girls made \_\_\_\_\_ efforts to clean up house for the par-

ty.

- (A) jealous                    (B) zealous
4. The general needs more troops and \_\_\_\_\_ to win the victory.  
 (A) material                    (B) materiel
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the team is low after its seven consecutive defeats.  
 (A) moral                      (B) morale

## 【解答】

1. A     2. A     3. B     4. B     5. B

## ~~~~~《第三部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                           | MEANING                                            | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ordinance</b><br>[ɔ:dinəns]<br><i>n. 法令</i> | a rule or law made by authority; regulation; canon | Freedom of religious worship was guaranteed to all settlers in the Northwest Territory by the <i>ordinance</i> of 1787. 1787年的法令保证着西北领地居民的宗教信仰自由。 |
| <b>ordnance</b><br>[ɔ:dnəns]<br><i>n. 炮；军械</i> | cannon or artillery; arms; armament                | The pirate ships in the West Indies were armed with heavy <i>ordnance</i> . 西印度群岛的海盗船武装有大量军火。                                                     |
| <b>parish</b> [pærɪʃ]<br><i>n. 教区</i>          | a district that has its own church and clergyman   | The minister worked very hard to make the rounds of his <i>parish</i> and visit the homes of the sick. 牧师卖力地巡查他教区和拜访病者的家。                         |

| WORD                                           | MEANING                                                                                                 | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>perish</b> [ˈperiʃ]<br>n. 死;毁灭              | be destroyed; die                                                                                       | They said that this flower would not <b>perish</b> even when frost comes. 他们说这花即使在霜降时也不会死。                                                                                          |
| <b>perpetrate</b> [pəˈpitreɪt]<br>v. 犯(罪)      | do or commit (crime, fraud, trick, or anything bad)                                                     | The police still don't know who <b>perpetrated</b> the murder of the housewife. 警方仍不知道是谁谋杀了那位家庭主妇。                                                                                  |
| <b>perpetuate</b> [pə(,:) 'petʃueɪt]<br>v. 使不朽 | make perpetual; keep from being forgotten; preserve                                                     | This monument was built to <b>perpetuate</b> the memory of the national hero. 纪念碑的建造使民族英雄永垂不朽。                                                                                      |
| <b>personality</b> [pə:sə'næliti]<br>n. 人格     | the quality that makes one person be different and act differently from another; character; disposition | Many psychologists are inclined to attribute the formation of <b>personality</b> entirely to the operation of the cultural and physical environment. 许多心理学家认为,人格的形成完全归因于文化与物质环境的作用。 |
| <b>personality</b> [pə:sənəlti]<br>n. 私人财产     | personal property                                                                                       | That car is his <b>personality</b> ; using it without his permission is illegal. 这辆车是他的私人财产,未经他的允许而使用是非法的。                                                                          |
| <b>persecute</b> [pə:sikju:t]<br>v. 迫害         | harass persistently; oppress; torment; wrong                                                            | Blessed are those who are <b>persecuted</b> for righteousness' sake. 那些因正直而受迫害的人有福了。                                                                                                |

| WORD                                                        | MEANING                                                                                        | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>prosecute</b><br>[prəsɪkju:t]<br><i>v.</i> 1. 对…提起公<br>诉 | 1. try by law; bring a case before a law court.<br>2. 进行<br>2. carry out; follow up;<br>pursue | The engineer of the wrecked train was <b>prosecuted</b> for criminal negligence. 这辆撞坏的火车的司机因过失伤害而被提起公诉。<br>He <b>prosecuted</b> an inquiry into reasons for the company's failure. 他对公司失败的原因进行调查。 |
|                                                             |                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

**Exercise 21.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Some countries have \_\_\_\_\_ forbidding the use of soft coal for heating.  
(A)ordinances                   (B)ordnances
2. A countless number of young soldiers \_\_\_\_\_ to win the war against North Korea.  
(A)parished                      (B)perished
3. The country \_\_\_\_\_ in postage stamps the centenary of her political independence.  
(A)perpetrated                   (B)perpetuated
4. The job is very difficult; it requires a man of strong \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A)personality                   (B)personalty
5. The old man \_\_\_\_\_ the dog by whipping it cruelly whenever it came near.  
(A)persecuted                    (B)prosecuted

【解答】

1. A     2. B     3. B     4. A     5. A

## ~~~~~《第四部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                                | MEANING                                                          | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>portable</b><br>[pɔ:təbl]<br><i>adj.</i> 可携带的    | capable of being carried or moved; easily carried                | The author takes his <i>portable</i> typewriter wherever he goes. 作家随身携带他的手提打字机。                                                                               |
| <b>potable</b> [poutəbl]<br><i>adj.</i> 适于饮用的       | fit for drinking; drinkable                                      | They set up purifying systems in dozens of places where the water was not <i>potable</i> . 他们在许多水不适当于饮用的地方设置了净化系统。                                             |
| <b>prescribe</b><br>[pris'kraib]<br><i>v.</i> 1. 命令 | 1. recommend a rule to be followed; order; direct<br><br>2. 开药方  | Good citizens always do what the laws <i>prescribe</i> . 好公民遵守法律。<br><br>The doctor <i>prescribed</i> a new medicine for the pain in my joints. 医生为我的关节痛开了种新药。 |
| <b>proscribe</b><br>[prous'kraib]<br><i>n.</i> 禁止   | forbid by law; prohibit as wrong; condemn                        | In earlier days, the church <i>proscribed</i> dancing and card playing. 早期,教会禁止跳舞和玩牌。                                                                          |
| <b>reality</b><br>[ri(:)l̩ɪti]<br><i>n.</i> 真实      | the quality or state of being real; real existence; a real thing | Slaughter and destruction are terrible <i>realities</i> of war. 屠杀和破坏是战争恐怖的事实。                                                                                 |

| WORD                                                          | MEANING                                                                    | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>realty</b> [ri'ælti]<br><i>n. 不动产</i>                      | real estate                                                                | His <i>realty</i> includes a big mansion and several buildings in Taipei.<br>他的不动产在台北有一栋大厦和若干大楼。                  |
| <b>statue</b> [stætju:]<br><i>n. 雕像</i>                       | an image of a person or animal carved or cast in solid material; sculpture | Nearly every city in the United States has a <i>statue</i> of some famous man. 在美国几乎每一个城市都有名人的雕像。                 |
| <b>stature</b> [stætʃə]<br><i>n. 身材</i>                       | the height of a person or thing; tallness                                  | A man six feet tall is above average <i>stature</i> in this part of the world. 在此处,一个人身高六英尺是高于普通身材的。              |
| <b>vacation</b><br>(və'keiʃən;<br>vei'keiʃən)<br><i>n. 假期</i> | a time of rest and freedom from work; holiday                              | My family is going to have a short <i>vacation</i> on the east coast.<br>我们家将要在东海岸度个短假期。                          |
| <b>vocation</b><br>(vou'keiʃən)<br><i>n. 职业</i>               | a particular occupation; business; profession; trade                       | You will not make a good teacher, unless you feel teaching is your <i>vocation</i> . 除非你能感到教书是你的职业,否则你将不会成为一个好老师。 |

**Exercise 21.4** 从第四部分中选出一个最适当的单词,填入空格内:

1. A \_\_\_\_\_ radio is popular because we can take it wherever we go.  
(A)portable                   (B)potable
2. What punishment does the law \_\_\_\_\_ for this kind of crime?  
(A)prescribe                   (B)proscribe
3. Her dream of marrying a prince became a \_\_\_\_\_.

(A)reality                    (B)realty

4. I watched him for nearly an hour; he sat rigid and immovable, like a \_\_\_\_\_.

(A)statue                    (B)stature

5. She chose teaching as her \_\_\_\_\_ because she thought she had a special fitness for it.

(A)vacation                    (B)vocation

**【解答】** 1. A    2. A    3. A    4. A    5. B

### 成果测验

**Exercise 21. 5** 由第二栏中选出第一栏各词的正确词意:

#### COLUMN I

#### COLUMN II

1. *draught*                    (A)raise a person to a higher rank

2. *drought*                    (B)easily carried

3. *exalt*                      (C)harass persistently

4. *exult*                      (D)lack of rain

5. *personality*                (E)a rough written form of anything

6. *personalty*                (F)rejoice greatly

7. *persecute*                (G)character

8. *prosecute*                (H)fit for drinking

9. *portable*                (I)personal property

10. *potable*                (J) try by law

**【解答】** 1. E 2. D 3. A 4. F 5. G 6. I 7. C 8. J 9. B 10. H

**Exercise 21.6** 阅读下面句子, 选出句中斜体词所代表的词意:



**【解答】** 1. B 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B

**Exercise 21.7** 选出一组与斜体词的意义最接近的答案。

1. delicious *dessert*  
(A) meal      (B) sweet food      (C) smell      (D) exotic music

2. eligible *bachelor*  
(A) qualified      (B) handsome      (C) educated      (D) engaged

3. bronze *statue*  
(A) metal      (B) vase      (C) sculpture      (D) era

4. heavy *ordnance*  
(A) punishment      (B) artillery      (C) tax      (D) rain

5. eminent *biologist*  
(A) mediocre      (B) outstanding      (C) enthusiastic      (D) diligent

6. *zealous* for fame  
 (A) indifferent (B) envious (C) ready (D) eager
7. *ingenuous* report  
 (A) sincere (B) wise  
 (C) carefully written (D) short
8. *traffic ordinance*  
 (A) violation (B) accident (C) regulation (D) jam
9. *dress material*  
 (A) fabric (B) style (C) manual (D) supplier
10. *portable* television  
 (A) automatic (B) capable of being carried  
 (C) easy to set up (D) educational

【解答】 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. B 6. D 7. A 8. C 9. A 10. B

**Exercise 21. 8** 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：

VOCABULARY LIST

|             |           |         |           |
|-------------|-----------|---------|-----------|
| prosecuted  | jealous   | reality | ingenious |
| perpetrated | illegible | potable | imminent  |
| ordinance   | perished  | stature | morale    |

1. The girl was \_\_\_\_\_ when she discovered that the boy loved someone else.
2. My sister is so \_\_\_\_\_ that she will think of a way to do the work more easily.
3. The black clouds, thunder, and lightning show that a storm is \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I doubted the \_\_\_\_\_ of what he had seen; I thought he must have dreamed it.
5. He started an inquiry into the causes of the fire, and \_\_\_\_\_ it for several weeks.

6. Hundreds of settlers \_\_\_\_\_ that year because of drought, famine, and epidemic diseases.
7. Trapped in the cave by a fall of rock, the men kept up their \_\_\_\_\_ by singing together.
8. The boy's hand writing was so bad that his letter to his mother was \_\_\_\_\_.
9. It usually takes a year for a dog to grow to its full \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The two thieves \_\_\_\_\_ the robbery of the jewelry store, and stole jewelry worth 2 million dollars.

【解答】 1. jealous 2. ingenious 3. imminent 4. reality  
5. prosecuted 6. perished 7. morale 8. illegible  
9. stature 10. perpetrated

本书由台湾学习出版公司  
授权海南(三环)出版社在  
大陆出版,翻印必究。

LESSON 22

### 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：



### △解 答 △

答 ▲

△解 答 △

(C)steal

## 《第一部分》

| WORD                                                         | MEANING                       | TYPICAL USE                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>alumna</b> (ə'lʌmneɪ)<br>n. 女毕业生<br><i>pl.</i> alumnae    | a female graduate of a school | My wife is an <i>alumna</i> of National Taiwan University. 我太太是台湾大学的毕业生。       |
| <b>alumnus</b><br>(ə'lʌmnəs)<br>n. 男毕业生<br><i>pl.</i> alumni | a male graduate of a school   | President Kennedy was an <i>alumnus</i> of Harvard University. 肯尼迪总统是哈佛大学的毕业生。 |

| WORD                                                        | MEANING                                                                          | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>alumni</b> (pl.)<br>[ə'lʌmnai]<br><i>n.</i> 毕业生<br>(复数形) | graduates of a school alumnus                                                    | My son and my daughter are both <i>alumni</i> of Ohio State University. 我的儿子和女儿都是俄亥俄州大学的毕业生。                                         |
| <b>amoral</b> [æ'mɔrel]<br><i>adj.</i> 非道德的                 | not subject to moral judgment; lacking a knowledge of right and wrong; non-moral | Cats are <i>amoral</i> ; they can't be censured for killing birds. 猫不受道德约束, 它们杀死鸟儿也不会受责难。                                            |
| <b>immoral</b> [i'mɔrl]<br><i>adj.</i> 不道德的                 | violating morality; sinful; wicked                                               | Lying and stealing are considered <i>immoral</i> conducts in every human society. 在人类社会中, 说谎和偷窃被视为不道德的行为。                            |
| <b>unmoral</b><br>['ʌnmɔrl]<br><i>adj.</i> 无关道德<br>问题的      | not pertaining to morality; neither moral nor immoral                            | Most scientists believe their research to be <i>unmoral</i> , no matter what the results will be. 大部分科学家认为他们的研究是无关道德的, 不论这些研究将有什么结果。 |
| <b>avocation</b><br>[ævou'keiʃn]<br><i>n.</i> 嗜好            | something that a person does besides his regular business; hobby                 | Stamp collecting as well as fishing is Mr. Evan's favorite <i>avocation</i> . 收集邮票就和钓鱼一样, 是伊凡先生最喜爱的嗜好。                               |
| <b>vocation</b><br>[vou'keiʃn]<br><i>n.</i> 职业              | main job; occupation; profession                                                 | Bookkeeping is Mr. Jones' <i>vocation</i> , and photography is his avocation. 薄记是琼斯先生的职业, 照像是他的副业。                                   |

| WORD                                                 | MEANING                                              | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>biannual</b><br>[bai'ænjuəl]<br><i>adj.</i> 一年二度的 | occurring twice a year                               | Our school doctor recommends a <b>biannual</b> visit to the dentist; I am going to the dentist's for the second time this year. 我们校医建议一年去看牙医两次,我要去看这年的第二次。 |
| <b>biennial</b><br>[bai'eniəl]<br><i>adj.</i> 二年一次的  | occurring once every two years; living for two years | The sophomores and seniors are taking the <b>biennial</b> exam this afternoon. 今天下午二年级和四年级的学生正在考二年一次的考试。                                                   |

**Exercise 22.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- Do you and your wife belong to the same \_\_\_\_\_ association?  
(A)alumna                   (B)alumnus                   (C)alumni
- You can't blame the baby for breaking the antique vase because he is \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A)amoral                   (B)immoral                   (C)unmoral
- Golf is a hobby of most people, but it is the \_\_\_\_\_ of a professional golfer.  
(A)avocation               (B)vocation
- The \_\_\_\_\_ examinations for the college applicants will be given in May and October this year.  
(A)biannual               (B)biennial

【解答】 1. C      2. A      3. B      4. A

## ~~~~~《第二部分》~~~~~

| WORD                                                 | MEANING                                                                                                              | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>chord</b> [kɔ:d]<br><i>n.</i> 琴弦                  | a string of a<br>stringed musical<br>instrument                                                                      | He is replacing the broken <b>chord</b><br>of his violin. 他正在更换小提琴上<br>的断弦。                                                       |
| <b>cord</b> [kɔ:d]<br><i>n.</i> 细绳                   | a thick string; a<br>very thin rope                                                                                  | He had tied the package with a<br><b>cord</b> before he took it to the post<br>office. 在去邮局之前,他就用细绳<br>把包裹系好。                     |
| <b>clench</b> [klenč]<br><i>v.</i> 咬紧(牙关);<br>紧握(拳头) | close tightly to-<br>gether; grasp<br>firmly                                                                         | He <b>clenched</b> his teeth to endure<br>the pain of the wound suffered<br>from the accident. 他咬紧牙关忍<br>受车祸受伤所带来的疼痛。             |
| <b>clinch</b> [klintʃ]<br><i>v.</i> 敲弯(钉头等);<br>使钉牢  | secure firmly by<br>bending down a<br>protruding point,<br>as of a nail or<br>slope                                  | By <b>clinching</b> nails over the canvas<br>they held the torn sail to the<br>mast. 他们在帆布上到处钉钉子,<br>把破帆弄回桅杆。                     |
| <b>climate</b> ['klaimit]<br><i>n.</i> 气候            | the weather<br>conditions of a<br>place over a<br>period of years                                                    | For fifty years or more the <b>cli-<br/>mate</b> of the Arctic has been<br>warming up gradually. 大约五十<br>年或五十多年来,北极的气候逐渐<br>暖和起来。 |
| <b>weather</b> ['weðə]<br><i>n.</i> 天气               | condition of the<br>air with respect<br>to temperature,<br>moisture, cloudi-<br>ness, etc. around<br>a certain place | The <b>weather</b> will be very hot and<br>humid in Kaohsiung today. 今天<br>高雄的天气将会很热又潮湿。                                          |

| WORD                                                       | MEANING                                                                   | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>compare</b><br>(kəm'pəə)<br><i>v. 比较</i>                | point out how persons or things are alike and how they differ             | We <b>compared</b> two books to see which one had the better illustrations. 我们比较这两本书，看看那一本有较好的插图。                             |
| <b>contrast</b><br>('kəntræst)<br><i>v. 对比</i>             | compare persons or things (of different kinds ) to show their differences | She <b>contrasted</b> her present life of luxury with the poverty of her childhood. 她将现在富裕生活和穷苦的童年做一对比。                       |
| <b>connotation</b><br>(,kənou'teɪʃən)<br><i>n. 涵意</i>      | the added meaning that a word suggests or implies                         | The words "snake" and "red" have unpleasant <b>connotations</b> for many people. 许多人认为“蛇”和“红色”有着不好的涵意。                        |
| <b>denotation</b><br>(,di:nou'teɪʃən)<br><i>n. (词句的)意义</i> | the exact, literal meaning of a word                                      | The <b>denotation</b> of the word "home" is "place where one lives," but it has many connotations. “家”的意义是“一个人的住所”，但是它还有许多涵意。 |

**Exercise 22.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The porter tied the bundle of clothes with a \_\_\_\_\_ to carry it easily.  
(A)chord                   (B)cord
  2. The carpenter \_\_\_\_\_ the nails of the bookcase he was building.  
(A)clenched               (B)clinched
  3. We have to cancel our picnic because of bad \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A)climate               (B)weather
  4. Before you buy meat, you should \_\_\_\_\_ its price at several stores.  
(A)compare               (B)contrast

5. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the word “snake” is a legless reptile with a long, thin body.  
 (A) connotation      (B) denotation

【解答】

1. B    2. B    3. B    4. A    5. B

## 《第三部分》

| WORD                                                      | MEANING                                                     | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>contemptible</b><br>[kən'temptbl]<br><i>adj.</i> 可鄙的   | deserving contempt or scorn; mean; low; worthless           | Cheating on a test is considered one of the most <i>contemptible</i> acts in the Military Academy. 在军事学院中, 考试作弊被视为最可鄙的行为之一。 |
| <b>contemptuous</b><br>[kən'temptjuəs]<br><i>adj.</i> 蔑视的 | showing or feeling contempt; scornful; disdainful           | The rich man is <i>contemptuous</i> of my humble home and poor surroundings. 那富人藐视我寒酸的家和穷苦的环境。                              |
| <b>continual</b><br>[kən'tinjuəl]<br><i>adj.</i> 连续的      | over and over again; regular but interrupted; frequent      | We experienced a <i>continual</i> series of hot spells last summer. 去年夏天我们经历了一连串持续的热天气。                                     |
| <b>continuous</b><br>[kən'tinjuəs]<br><i>adj.</i> 不断的     | continuing without stopping; ceaseless; unbroken; incessant | On holidays, we can see a <i>continuous</i> line of cars on highways. 假日我们可以看到高速公路上的车子络绎不绝。                                 |

| WORD                                                         | MEANING                                                          | TYPICAL USE                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>credible</b><br>('kredəbl)<br><i>adj.</i> 可信的             | deserving or worthy of belief; believable; trustworthy; reliable | It hardly seems <b>credible</b> that your son has grown so tall in one year. 简直令人不敢相信你的儿子在一年之中竟长得这么高了。                                              |
| <b>credulous</b><br>('kredjuləs)<br><i>adj.</i> 轻信的          | too much inclined to believe; easily deceived; gullible          | Only a <b>credulous</b> person would fall for that old trick. 只有轻信的人才会上了那老把戏的当。                                                                     |
| <b>disinterested</b><br>(dis'interistid)<br><i>adj.</i> 公正的  | free from selfish motives; impartial; unbiased; fair             | An umpire must be an entirely <b>disinterested</b> but keen observer. 裁判必须是个完全公正又敏锐的观察者。                                                            |
| <b>uninterested</b><br>('ʌn'interistid)<br><i>adj.</i> 不感兴趣的 | not interested; uncaring                                         | The audience yawned and seemed <b>uninterested</b> in the politician's speech. 听众打着哈欠,似乎对政治家的演说并不感兴趣。                                               |
| <b>disorganized</b><br>(dis'ɔ:gənaɪzd)<br><i>adj.</i> 杂乱无章的  | thrown into confusion and disorder; disarranged                  | The office, where everything had worked so smoothly, became completely <b>disorganized</b> after Mr. Levine resigned. 在莱文先生辞职后,这个原本运作得很顺利的公司变得杂乱无章。 |
| <b>unorganized</b><br>('ʌn'ɔ:gənaɪzd)<br><i>adj.</i> 未加组织的   | not formed into a systematized whole                             | Form a union; an <b>unorganized</b> mob can accomplish nothing but chaos. 要组成一个团体,未加组织的群众只会一片混乱而不能成事。                                               |

**Exercise 22.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Every employer has a \_\_\_\_\_ attitude toward sloppy work.  
 (A) contemptible                    (B) contemptuous
2. No one likes \_\_\_\_\_ interruptions while he is reading a book.  
 (A) continual                        (B) continuous
3. What he had said about the fire, though unusual, is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) credible                        (B) credulous
4. His action cannot be considered to be \_\_\_\_\_ because he hoped to make money out of the affair.  
 (A) disinterested                    (B) uninterested
5. It's better to be \_\_\_\_\_ than not organized at all.  
 (A) disorganized                    (B) unorganized

【解答】

1. B      2. A      3. A      4. A      5. A

~~~~~《第四部分》~~~~~

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|-----------------------------------|--|
| divers
[daɪ'ver(:)z]
<i>adj.</i> 种种的 | more than one; several; different | A well-balanced diet is made up of <i>divers</i> foods. 均衡的饮食是由种种的食物所构成。 |
| diverse [dai'ves]
<i>adj.</i> 不同的 | various; unlike; varied | A great many <i>diverse</i> opinions were expressed at the meeting, but none was worthwhile. 许多不同的意见在会议中被提出,却没有一个值得采纳。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|--|
| dual [dju(:)əl]
<i>adj.</i> 二重的；两层的 | composed or consisting of two parts; double; twofold | The training airplane has dual controls, one set for the learner and one for the teacher. 教练机有两套控制系统,一套为学生另一套为教师而设。 |
| duel [dju(:)əl]
<i>n.</i> 决斗;相斗 | a formal fight to settle a quarrel or avenge an insult | The opposing two lawyers fought a duel to settle their differences. 两敌对律师为解决他们之间的纷争而相斗。 |
| egoist [egouist]
<i>n.</i> 利己主义者 | a person who seeks the welfare of himself; a self-centered, selfish person | John is such an egoist that he only cares about himself. 约翰是一个利己主义者,他只关心自己。 |
| egotist [egoutist]
<i>n.</i> 自大者 | a person who boasts too much about himself; a conceited person | Marian is such an egotist that she talks about herself all the time. 玛利安是个自大者,她总是谈论着自己。 |
| emerge [ɪ'mer:dʒ]
<i>v.</i> 出现 | come out; come up; come into view | After the shower, the sun merged from behind the clouds. 阵雨过后,太阳自云后出现。 |
| immerse [ɪ'mer:dʒ]
<i>v.</i> 浸入 | put under water; dip; submerge; immerse | He immersed his aching feet in a bucket of hot water. 他将疼痛的双脚浸入热水中。 |
| emigrant
[əmigrənt]
<i>n.</i> 自本国移居他国者 | a person who leaves one country to move to another | It is expected that the total number of emigrants from this country will reach 20,000 this year. 从这个国家来的移民,今年预料会达到两万。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|-------------------------|--|--|
| immigrant
[imigrənt] | a person who enters one country from another | California has several thousands of <i>immigrants</i> from other states. |
| n. 自他国移入者 | from another | 加州有数千个他州移入者。 |

Exercise 22.4 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格中:

1. A person of _____ interests can talk about many subjects.
(A)divers (B)diverse
2. _____ are fought with guns or swords in the presence of witnesses called seconds.
(A)Duels (B)Duels
3. Perhaps the most eminent _____ the appeared in the world was Montaigne; he wrote too much about himself.
(A)egoist (B)egotist
4. A considerable number of new facts _____ as a result of the careful investigation.
(A)emerged (B)immerged
5. Canada has many _____ from Europe and Asia.
(A)emigrants (B)immigrants

【解答】

1. B 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. B

成果测验

Exercise 22.5 由第二栏中选出第一栏各词的正确词义:

COLUMN I

COLUMN II

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| _____ 1. immoral | (A) a self-centered, selfish person |
| _____ 2. unmoral | (B) the added meaning that a word implies |
| _____ 3. chord | (C) showing contempt |

4. cord (D)deserving contempt
5. denotation (E)a person who boasts too much about himself
6. connotation (F)the exact, literal meaning of a word
7. egoist (G)a very thin rope
8. egotist (H)violating morality
9. contemptible (I)not pertaining to morality
10. contemptuous (J)a string of a musical instrument

【解答】 1. H 2. I 3. J 4. G 5. F 6. B 7. A 8. E 9. D 10. C

Exercise 22. 6 阅读下面的句子,选出句中斜体词部分所代表的意义:

1. The *people* who enter the U. S. from Europe used to get off the boat in New York.
 (A)emigrants to the U. S. (B)immigrants to the U. S.
2. Both my daughters are *graduates* of Pembroke Women's College in Rhode Island.
 (A)alumnae (B)alumni
3. After his latest scandal, he hardly *seems trustworthy* as a politician.
 (A)credible (B)credulous
4. It seems that most Germans do not consider Hitler a *mean* person.
 (A)contemptible (B)contemptuous
5. The brain needs a *constant and uninterrupted* supply of blood to function properly.
 (A)continual (B)continuous

【解答】 1. B 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. B

Exercise 22.7 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的答案：

1. *biannual publication*

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| (A) once every two years | (B) twice a year |
| (C) lasting for a year | (D) lasting for two years |

2. *tropical climate*

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| (A) weather conditions | (B) storm |
| (C) region | (D) crops and fruit |

3. *continual hammering*

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------|
| (A) perpetual | (B) unbroken |
| (C) over and over again | (D) violent |

4. *disinterested umpire*

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| (A) bored | (B) impartial |
| (C) disguised | (D) wise |

5. *dual purposes*

- | | |
|-----------------|------------|
| (A) fighting | (B) wicked |
| (C) appropriate | (D) double |

6. *clinched nails*

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| (A) secured firmly | (B) broken apart |
| (C) put together | (D) fixed loosely |

7. *immoral acts*

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| (A) wicked | (B) non-moral |
| (C) delayed | (D) impolite |

8. *contemptuous look*

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| (A) showing contempt | (B) concealed |
| (C) mean | (D) deserving contempt |

9. *credulous person*

- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| (A) reliable | (B) self-centered |
| (C) sincere | (D) gullible |

10. *clenched fists*

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| (A)fixed firmly | (B)closed tightly |
| (C)opened widely | (D)trembled violently |

【解答】 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. D 6. A 7. A 8. A 9. D 10. B

Exercise 22: 8 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：

VOCABULARY LIST

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------|--------------|--------------|
| immerged | duel | emigrants | uninterested |
| contemptible | credulous | connotations | contrasts |
| avocation | clenched | biennial | compared |

1. It is very difficult to entertain anyone so _____ in everything.
2. I _____ my answers with the teacher's and found that I had made a mistake.
3. She was so _____ that the other children could fool her easily.
4. The reporter _____ his pencil in his teeth while he was wiping his glasses.
5. The _____ art shows were held in our city in 1970, 1972, 1974, and 1976.
6. "Skinny" and "slim" are two words for the same denotation, but their _____ are different.
7. Mr. Brown is a lawyer, but writing stories for children is his _____.
8. She _____ her right foot into the pool to see how cold the water was.
9. To avenge the insult, the man proposed a (an) _____ with handguns to the colonel.
10. The strained language of his speeches _____ oddly with the ease and naturalness of his letters.

【解答】 1. uninterested 2. compared 3. credulous 4. clenched
5. biennial 6. connotations 7. avocation 8. immersed
9. duel 10. contrasts

本书由台湾学习出版公司
授权海南(三环)出版社在
大陆出版,翻印必究。

LESSON 23

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. _____ people believe in *humane* treatment of prisoners.
 (A)Diligent (B)Civilized (C)Primitive
2. The _____ is an *imaginary* circle around the earth.
 (A)moon (B)sun (C)equator
3. Because he _____, he is *liable* to fail.
 (A)is getting along well (B)is doing his best
 (C)wasn't working hard
4. He sat alone after the battle, *mourning* over the _____ of his best friend.
 (A)loss (B)achievement (C)help
5. A _____ can help some people to understand their *subconscious* urges.
 (A)physician (B)psychiatrist (C)surgeon

▲解 答 ▲

1. B 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. B

(第一部分)

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|-----------------------|---|
| farther
[ˈfa:ðə] <i>adv.</i> 更远地 | at a greater distance | He has to leave now, he lives <i>farther</i> from here than I do.
他必须马上离开,他住得比我还远。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|--|
| further [fə:rðə]
<i>adv.</i> 更进一步
地;此外 | to a greater extent; more; additional | All the members of the committee agreed to inquire <i>further</i> into the matter. 全部会员同意更进一步地调查这件事。 |
| hanged
[hæŋd]
<i>v.</i> 绞死 | put to death by hanging; hang | The man living next door <i>hanged</i> himself in sorrow after his wife died. 隔壁的那个人在他妻子死后，伤心过度自缢了。 |
| hung [hʌŋ]
<i>v.</i> 悬挂 | suspended or caused to be suspended from a wall, ceiling, etc. hang | We <i>hung</i> our reproduction of "Mona Liza" above the fireplace. 我们将“蒙娜丽莎”的复制品悬挂在壁炉墙上。 |
| historic
[his'tɔrik]
<i>adj.</i> 历史上著名的 | famous or important in history; noted; celebrated; renowned | Tainan is one of the <i>historic</i> spots that you should visit. 台南是你应当游览的名胜之一。 |
| historical
[his'tɔrikəl]
<i>adj.</i> 有关历史的 | concerned with history | Upon retiring from the office, the President gave all the <i>historical</i> papers to the library. 总统一退职就把所有历史文件送进图书馆。 |
| human ['hju:mən]
<i>adj.</i> 人类的 | of or concerning man | The philosopher claims that kindness is a <i>human</i> trait, but I don't believe it. 那个哲学家宣称，仁慈是人类的特质，但是我不相信。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|--|---|
| humane
[hju(:)’mein]
<i>adj.</i> 慈悲的；仁爱的 | kind; tender; compassionate; merciful | <i>Humane</i> people are considerate of not only other people but also animals. 慈悲为怀的人不仅关心其他人还关心动物。 |
| imaginary
[i’mædʒinəri]
<i>adj.</i> 虚构的 | existing only in the imagination; not real | Some people do not believe that ghosts are not real but <i>imaginary</i> beings.
有些人相信鬼是真的而非虚构的。 |
| imaginative
[i’mædʒinətiv]
<i>adj.</i> 富于想象的 | having a good imagination; inventive | The <i>imaginative</i> child always likes to make up fairy tales. 富于想象力的小孩总喜欢编神仙故事。 |

Exercise 23. 1 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. The crew pushed the boat _____ into the water to make it float.
(A)farther (B)further
2. Upon entering he took off his coat and _____ it on the hook.
(A)hanged (B)hung
3. It is a _____ fact that George Washington was the first President of the United States.
(A)historic (B)historical
4. No life that breathes with _____ breath has ever truly longed for death
(A)human (B)humane.
5. The mind storytellers must have great _____ power.
(A)imaginary (B)imaginative

【解答】

1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. B

《第二部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|---|
| incomparable
[in'kəmpərəbl]
<i>adj.</i> 举世无双的 | without equal; matchless; unique | Bessie Smith was an <i>incomparable</i> singer in her days.
贝茜·史密斯在她那个时代是举世无双的歌手。 |
| uncomparable
[ʌn'kəmpərəbl]
<i>adj.</i> 无法比较的 | so different that comparison is impossible; not open to comparison | It is foolish to compare horses with airplanes; they are <i>uncomparable</i> . 去比较马和飞机的差异是愚蠢的，它们是无法比较的。 |
| incredible
[in'kredəbl]
<i>adj.</i> 难以置信的 | hard to believe; unbelievable | Some old superstitions seem <i>incredible</i> to most educated people.
有些古老的迷信对大部分受过教育的人来说，是难以置信的。 |
| incredulous
[in'kredjulas]
<i>adj.</i> 不信的 | not ready to believe; doubting; skeptical | People nowadays are <i>incredulous</i> about ghosts and witches. 现在的人们对鬼和巫婆都不相信了。 |
| lay [lei]
<i>v.</i> 放置 | put something down; place; put | The gentleman <i>laid</i> his hand on his son's shoulder.
那绅士将手放在他儿子肩上。 |
| lie [laɪ]
<i>v.</i> 躺 | have one's body in a flat position along the ground or other surface; recline | The wounded soldier was <i>lying</i> on the battlefield.
伤兵躺在战场上。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|--|
| apt [æpt]
<i>adj.</i> 1. 易于 | 1. having a natural or habitual tendency to do something; usually expected to
2. 聪明的 | This kind of shoe is <i>apt</i> to slip on wet ground.
这种鞋子很容易在湿地上滑倒。
Henry is an <i>apt</i> student of the practical science. 亨利在应用科学这方面是个优秀的学生。 |
| liable ['laɪəbl]
<i>adj.</i> 1. 易患的 | 1. in danger of having or doing
2. 应负责的 | Children under the age of 10 are all <i>liable</i> to diseases.
十岁以下的小孩易患疾病。
He declared that he was not <i>liable</i> for his wife's debts.
他宣称他不应负责他太太的债。 |
| likely ['laɪkli]
<i>adj.</i> 有可能的 | probable; expected but not as a matter of course | The weather forecast says that it's <i>likely</i> to be hot tomorrow.
天气预报说明天可能会变热。 |
| luxuriant
[lʌg'zjuəriənt]
<i>adj.</i> 繁茂的；多产的 | growing thick and green; producing abundantly; abundant | The backyard of our house has a <i>luxuriant</i> growth of weeds.
我们家的后院长了一大堆杂草。 |
| luxurious
[lʌg'zjuəriəs]
<i>adj.</i> 奢侈的 | fond of luxury; self-indulgent; giving luxury | She is too proud, too <i>luxurious</i> , to marry an average man like you. 她太骄傲也太奢侈了，所以不能嫁给象你这样的普通人。 |

Exercise 23. 2 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. According to *Iliad* written by Homer, Helen of Troy had _____ beauty.

- (A) incomparable (B) uncomparable
2. It is _____ that a perfect man like you could have made such a mistake.
 (A) incredible (B) incredulous
3. A skillful workman is able to _____ bricks very accurately and quickly.
 (A) lay (B) lie
4. Children are _____ to be noisy while they are playing.
 (A) apt (B) liable (C) likely
5. The governor of the state lives in a _____ mansion.
 (A) luxuriant (B) luxurious

【解答】

1. A 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. B

《第三部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| moan (moun)
n. 呻吟 | a long; low sound of suffering | From time to time, during the night, there was a <i>moan</i> of pain from the sick man.
病人经常晚上因疼痛而呻吟。 |
| mourn (mɔ:n)
v. 哀悼 | feel or show sorrow over; grieve; lament | The whole nation <i>mourned</i> the death of the much-loved President. 全国哀悼备受敬爱的总统的逝世。 |
| oral ('ɔ:rəl)
adj. 口头的 | using speech; not written; spoken | The company will give only <i>oral</i> tests to the applicants.
公司只以口试来甄选应征者 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|--|
| verbal [və:bəl]
<i>adj.</i> 言辞的 | in or of words; as distinguished from other means of description | This written report contains both a <i>verbal</i> description and a sketch of the building. 这份书面报告包括了这座建筑的言辞描述及草图。 |
| personal
[pə:sənl]
<i>adj.</i> 亲自的；私人的 | of, for or belonging to a particular person; individual; private | The minister made a <i>personal</i> visit to the scene of the fighting. 部长到战争现场去作个人的拜访。 |
| personnel
[pə:sə'nel]
<i>n.</i> 人员 | the people employed in any work, business, or service | The general issued an order to capture the hill to all <i>personnel</i> . 将军下令要全体人员攻占小山。 |
| respectably
[ris'pektəblɪ]
<i>adv.</i> 相当好地 | in a worthy or proper manner; moderately; very well | The man seemed poor, but he was <i>respectably</i> dressed. 这人似乎很贫穷,衣着却相当好。 |
| respectfully
[ris'pektfʊlɪ]
<i>adv.</i> 有礼貌地 | in a respectful or polite manner; politely | Children should speak <i>respectfully</i> to their elders. 小孩对长者说话应有礼貌。 |
| respectively
[ris'pektɪvlɪ]
<i>adv.</i> 个别地；各自地 | in a specified order | The first, second, and third prizes went to Jack, George, and Frank <i>respectively</i> . 头奖、二奖、三奖分别颁给杰克、乔治和富兰克。 |
| raise [reɪz]
<i>v.</i> 1. 举起 | 1. lift something | She <i>raised</i> her finger to her lips as a sign for silence. 她举起手指放在唇边以示安静。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--------------------|----------------------------|--|
| 2. 饲养 | 2. grow or breed something | The farmer <i>raises</i> cattle and crops. 农夫饲养牛群和种植谷物。 |
| rise [raɪz] | get up; arise;
stand | The sun will <i>rise</i> at 5:45 tomorrow morning. 明早太阳将在五点四十五分升起。 |
| v. 升起;矗立 | | |

Exercise 23.3 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. The sick man made a _____ in his sleep during the night.
(A)moan (B)mourn
 2. A (An) _____ agreement is not enough; we must have a written promise.
(A)oral (B)verbal
 3. You must apply for a job in the company's _____ office.
(A)personal (B)personnel
 4. The woman struggled to bring up her children _____.
(A)respectably (B)respectfully (C)respectively
 5. When the snow melts, the river will _____ to its banks.
(A)raise (B)rise

【答案】 1.A 2.A 3.B 4.A 5.B

~《第四部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|--|
| register
['redʒɪsteə]
<i>v.</i> 1. 登记;注册 | 1. write in a list
or record; write
one's name in a
list | We have to go to the government
patent office to register the new
trademark.

我们必须去专利局注册新的商标。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|---|
| 2. 挂号
2. registered
[redzɪ'stred]
<i>n.</i> 登记员;
(学校里的)注册主任 | 2. have a letter recorded in a post office
a keeper of official records; official recorder. | It is safe to <i>register</i> the letter containing the check. 带有支票的信件用挂号比较安全。
Go to the <i>registrar</i> of the university to know your grades.
找学校里的注册主任查明你的成绩。 |
| sailor [ˈseɪlə]
<i>n.</i> 帆船 | a ship with reference to its sailing power; a sailing vessel | The boat we are on is the best <i>sailor</i> in the fleet.
在这一船队中,我们的帆船是最好的。 |
| sailor [ˈseɪlə]
<i>n.</i> 水手 | a person with a job on a ship, especially one who is not a ship's officer | The men in our navy are called <i>sailors</i> if they are not officers. 在海军中,如果不是军官,我们称他们为水手。 |
| salon [ˈsælɔ:n]
<i>n.</i> 客厅 | a large room for receiving or entertaining guests | A group of college professors were waiting in the main <i>salon</i> to see the Minister of Education. 一群大学教授正在大厅等着谒见教育部长。 |
| saloon [sə'lu:n]
<i>n.</i> 酒店;
(轮船的)大厅 | a place where alcoholic drinks are sold and drunk; tavern; bar | The ship's passengers have their dinners in the dining <i>saloon</i> . 船上的乘客在大厅中享用晚餐。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|---|
| subconscious
['sʌb'kənʃəs]
<i>adj.</i> 潜意识的 | present in the mind but not fully perceived; existing but not felt | It was certain that Oswald might have a <i>subconscious</i> desire to injure his father. 奥斯华德在潜意识里可能有伤害他父亲的意图。 |
| unconscious
[ʌn'kənʃəs]
<i>adj.</i> 1. 失去知觉
2. 不觉察的 | 1. not conscious, as a person who has fainted
2. not aware | Edna was <i>unconscious</i> for two hours after the accident.
爱德娜在车祸后昏迷了两个小时。

The general was <i>unconscious</i> of being followed by the spy.
将军不知道他被间谍跟踪了。 |
| transcript
('trænskript)
<i>n.</i> 副本; 褚本 | a written or type-written copy; a copy | The club's secretary prepared several <i>transcripts</i> of minutes of the meeting. 俱乐部的秘书准备了很多份会议记录的副本。 |
| transcription
[træn'skripʃən]
<i>n.</i> 褚写 | the act or process of transcribing; copying | The <i>transcription</i> of words into phonetic symbols requires special training.
把文字褚写为音标需要专门训练。 |

Exercise 23.4 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词，填入空格内：

1. Write to the _____ of the university to get the application form.
(A)register (B)registrar
 2. He got a job as a _____ of the ship to travel around the world.
(A)sailer (B)sailor
 3. The majority of the citizens of this village are tired of the _____ and want it to be closed.
(A)salon (B)saloon
 4. He was knocked completely _____ for several hours when the car

struck him.

- (A) subconscious (B) unconscious

5. The college wanted a _____ of the student's high-school record.

- (A) transcript (B) transcription

【解答】

1. B 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. A

成果测验

Exercise 23.5 由第二栏中选出第一栏各词的正确词义：

COLUMN I

- _____ 1. incomparable
- _____ 2. uncomparable
- _____ 3. historic
- _____ 4. historical
- _____ 5. liable
- _____ 6. likely
- _____ 7. oral
- _____ 8. verbal
- _____ 9. subconscious
- _____ 10. unconscious

COLUMN II

- (A) totally unaware
- (B) spoken
- (C) without equal; matchless
- (D) in or of words
- (E) not open to comparison
- (F) important in history
- (G) concerned with history
- (H) in danger of having or doing
- (I) existing but not felt
- (J) probable

【解答】 1. C 2. E 3. F 4. G 5. H 6. J 7. B 8. D 9. I 10. A

Exercise 23.6 阅读下面句子，选出句中斜体词所代表的意义：

1. As she came in, she *placed* the plate on the table.

- (A) laid (B) lied

2. You should always treat older people *politely*.

- (A) respectfully (B) respectively

3. Children in school usually *lift* their hands to answer a question.
 (A)raise (B)rise
4. She told him to clean his room and *said more* that he must make his bed.
 (A)farther (B)further
5. The mind of a storyteller has great *creative* powers.
 (A)imaginary (B)imaginative

【解答】

1. A 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. B

Exercise 23.7 找一个与斜体词的意义最接近的答案：

1. *raise cattle*
 (A)arise (B)lift (C)grow (D)raze
2. *oral examination*
 (A)listening (B)spoken (C)verbal (D)written
3. *incomparable beauty*
 (A)matchless (B)not comparable
 (C)uncontrastive (D)equal
4. *historic occasion*
 (A)concerned with history (B)resultant
 (C)important in history (D)subsequent
5. *humane treatment*
 (A)personal (B)human
 (C)compassionate (D)cruel
6. *an apt pupil*
 (A)liable (B)appropriate (C)responsible (D)clever
7. *imaginative story*

8. school *registrar*

- (A) official recorder ; (B) list of names
(C) registration ; (D) records

9. personal matter

- (A) of human being (B) private
(C) belonging to every one (D) not individual

10. beauty salon

- (A) shop (B) place (C) maker (D) tavern

【解答】 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. C 6. D 7. C 8. A 9. B 10. A

VOCABULARY LIST

| | | | |
|-------------|--------------|-----------|------------|
| hanged | human | imaginary | incredible |
| imaginative | incredulous | moan | verbal |
| mourns | respectively | personnel | luxurious |

1. All the characters in this book are _____ but, not real.
 2. The criminal was sentenced to be _____ by the neck until dead.
 3. The _____ of the company are unhappy about the recent changes.
 4. She gave a glass of beer to the man and a toy rabbit to the baby,
_____.
 5. His story of having seen a ghost seemed _____ to his family.
 6. The lady couldn't bear this kind of humble life because she was accustomed to _____ life.

7. I heard the _____ of the patient all night; it wasn't a cheerful sound.
8. The old woman still _____ for her son, 30 years after his death.
9. To know what will happen in the future is beyond _____ power.
10. I was _____ when I heard that you had made such a mistake.

【解答】 1. imaginary 2. hanged 3. personnel 4. respectively

5. incredible 6. luxurious 7. moan 8. mourns 9. human

10. incredulous

本书由台湾学习出版公司
授权海南(三环)出版社在
大陆出版,翻印必究。

LESSON 24

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

△ 解 答 △

1. A 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. A

《第一部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|-------------------------|--|--|
| altar [ˈɔ:lta]
n. 神坛 | a table or raised level surface on which things are offered to a god | The woman knelt before the <i>altar</i> to pray to God for her son's safe return. 那妇人跑在神坛前面，祈求上苍保佑她的儿子能平安归来。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|------------------------------|--|---|
| alter [ə'lte]
v. 改变 | change; make different; vary; modify. | If it rains, we have to <i>alter</i> our plan to have a picnic on Sunday. 如果星期天下雨, 我们就得改变野餐的计划了。 |
| ascent [ə'sent]
n. 攀登; 上升 | an act of going up; a rising; a climbing | Chinese mountain climbers made a successful <i>ascent</i> of Mt. McKinley in North America. 中国登山者成功地攀登了北美的麦金利山。 |
| assent [ə'sent]
n. 同意 | acceptance of a proposal; agreement | I won't give my <i>assent</i> to her plan because it is not well prepared. 我不会同意她的计划, 因为计划并未准备充分。 |
| cannon ['kænən]
n. 大炮 | a large gun, often mounted on wheels | There are several old <i>cannons</i> on the wall of the castle. 城堡的墙上有几座古老的大炮。 |
| canon ['kænən]
n. 教规 | a rule or law, especially of religious faith | This <i>canon</i> has been enacted by the church council very recently. 教会就在最近通过这条教规。 |
| canvas [ˈkænvəs]
n. 帆布 | strong rough cloth used for tents, sails, bags, etc.; sailcloth; tarpaulin | The tops of my sneakers are made of <i>canvas</i> . 我的运动鞋的上部是帆布做成的。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|--|
| canvass
[kænvəs]
<i>n.</i> 招徕(顾客);兜售 | ask for political support or sales of one's goods, especially going from house to house | The salesman <i>canvassed</i> the whole city for subscriptions of the magazine. 推销员走遍全城找人订阅杂志。 |
| cession
[səfʒən]
<i>n.</i> 割让 | a handing over to another; ceding; giving up | The <i>cession</i> of the territory could not be avoided because they lost the war. 因为他们输了这场战争,割让领土是无法避免的。 |
| session [səʃən]
<i>n.</i> (会议等的)开会;
开庭 | a formal meeting of an organization | Be seated! The court is now in <i>session</i> .
请坐好! 法庭现在开庭。 |

Exercise 24. 1 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- If the coat is too large, a tailor can _____ it to fit you.
(A)altar (B)alter
- The teacher gave his _____ to the students' plan to have a dancing party.
(A)ascent (B)assent
- His behavior offends the _____ of good manners.
(A)cannons (B)canons
- The Labor Party _____ all of this town but it won't win the election.
(A)canvased (B)canvassed
- This year's _____ of the National Assembly has been unusually long.
(A)cession (B)session

【解答】 1. B 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. B

《第二部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|--|
| faint
(feint)
<i>v.</i> 1. 昏厥
<i>adj.</i> 2. 模糊的 | 1. lose consciousness briefly
2. not clear; plain; dim | The soldier <i>fainted</i> at the sight of his own blood. 那士兵一看到自己的血就昏倒了。
The color became <i>faint</i> as the sun set. 太阳下山后,颜色变得模糊不清。 |
| feint (feint)
<i>v.</i> 作假击 | feign an attack; make a pretended blow | He <i>feinted</i> with his left hand and hit me with his right. 他用左手虚晃一招而用右手打我。 |
| intension
(in'tenʃən)
<i>n.</i> 激烈 | increase in degree; intensification; augmentation | In recent years there has been an <i>intension</i> of the struggle for political power in the country.
最近几年来这个国家中争夺政治势力的情形愈演愈激烈。 |
| intention
(in'tenʃən)
<i>n.</i> 意图 | a determination to act in a certain way; purpose; design; plan | She felt offended at my remarks, but it wasn't my <i>intention</i> to hurt her. 我的评论使她受挫,但我无意去伤害她。 |
| pray
(prei)
<i>v.</i> 祈祷 | speak to God in worship; offer worship; ask earnestly | There is nothing that we can do now but <i>pray</i> God helps us in our troubles. 现在除了祈求上帝帮助我们度过难关外,就别无他法了。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|--|
| prey (prei)
<i>n.</i> 被捕食之物 | an animal that is hunted and eaten by another animal | The lion seized its <i>prey</i> and ate it. 狮子捕食了它的猎物。 |
| principal
[prɪn'səpəl]
<i>adj.</i> 1. 首要的

<i>n.</i> 2. 中小学校长 | 1. most important; chief; main

2. the head of an elementary or secondary school | Chicago is the <i>principal</i> city in the Midwest of the United States. 芝加哥是美国中西部首要的城市。

The <i>principal</i> told the teachers to dismiss school during the heavy snowstorm. 校长告诉老师们, 暴风雨时学校停课。 |
| principle
[prɪn'səpl]
<i>n.</i> 基本信条; 真谛 | a general rule or truth that is a foundation for other truths | This country was founded on the <i>principle</i> of individual freedom for all. 这个国家以全民自由的信条而立国。 |
| stationary
['steɪʃənəri]
<i>adj.</i> 固定的 | in a fixed position; standing still; not moving | The population of France remained <i>stationary</i> almost for a century. 近一世纪来, 法国的人口并无增减。 |
| stationery
['steɪʃənəri]
<i>n.</i> 文具 | writing materials such as paper, cards, etc. | Herbert bought a notebook at the <i>stationery</i> store.
赫伯特在文具店买了一本笔记本。 |

Exercise 24. 2 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

- Some girls often _____ at the sight of a mouse.
(A)faint (B)feint
- Her _____ to help us was good, but she was only in our way.
(A)intension (B)intention

3. The entire congregation bowed their heads to _____ to God.
 (A) pray (B) prey
4. Carelessness is a _____ cause of highway accident.
 (A) principal (B) principle
5. The man gave his son a box of _____ for Christmas.
 (A) stationary (B) stationery

【解答】

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B

《第三部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|---|
| address
[ə'dres]
<i>n.</i> 地址
<i>v.</i> 发表演说 | the place to which one's mail is directed
make a speech to | Please write your name and address on this paper.
请在纸上写下姓名和地址。
The President addressed the nation on the subject of war and peace. 总统以战争与和平为主题，对全国发表演说。 |
| attribute
['ætribju:t]
<i>n.</i> 性质 | a quality belonging to the nature of a person or thing;
characteristic | Darkness is an attribute of night, as brightness is that of day.
黑暗是夜晚的本质，而白昼的本质是光明。 |
| [ə'tribju(:)t]
<i>n.</i> 归因 | believe something to be the result of | We attribute Edison's success to intelligence and hard work. 我们将爱迪生的成功归因于天分与努力。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|---|---|--|
| committee
[kə'mit̬i]
<i>n.</i> 委员会 | a group of people chosen to do a particular job | The teachers appointed a <i>committee</i> of five members to plan the class picnic. 教师指定由五人组成的委员会计划班级野餐。 |
| <i>n.</i> 管财人 | a person entrusted by a court with the care of a person or estate | The court appointed Mr. Lansing as the <i>committee</i> that would take care of the boy's property. 法院指定蓝辛管理那男孩的财产。 |
| concert [ˈkɔnsət]
<i>n.</i> 音乐会 | a musical performance in which several musicians take part | She likes music very much; she never misses a <i>concert</i> . 她很喜欢音乐,从来不会错过任何一场音乐会。 |
| [kən'sert]
<i>v.</i> 协同工作 | arrange a matter or act by agreement with someone | We <i>concerted</i> on the most proper methods for speedily executing the manager's instructions. 我们以最好的方式合作,以便迅速地执行经理的指示。 |
| content
[ˈkɔntent]
<i>n.</i> 内容 | what is contained in anything; all things inside | I tried but couldn't understand the <i>content</i> of his speech. 我试着去了解他演讲的内容,但还是不懂。 |
| [kən'tent]
<i>n.</i> 使满意 | make a person satisfied or happy; gratify; appease | John <i>contented</i> himself with two glasses of beer even though he could have had more. 约翰在喝了两杯啤酒之后就满足了,尽管他还可以多喝。 |

Exercise 24.3 从第三部分中选出斜体词的正确音标:

1. Above all, patience is the most important *attribute* of a good teacher.
 (A) /ætribju:t (B) /ə'tribju(:)t
2. The orchestra gave a *concert* that lasted two hours.
 (A) /kɔnsət (B) /kən'sə:t
3. Will it *content* you if I let you have the candy tomorrow?
 (A) /'kɔntent (B) /kən'tent

【解答】

1. A

2. A

3. B

《第四部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|--|
| converse
/kən've:s/
<i>n.</i> 相反的事物 | the opposite of something
“Honest but poor” is the converse of “poor but honest”. “诚实而穷”是“穷而诚实”的反语。 | |
| converse
/kən've:s/
<i>v.</i> 谈话 | talk together in an informal way; chat | He <i>conversed</i> with his wife about the summer vacation.
他和妻子谈论暑假。 |
| desert
/dəzə:t/
<i>n.</i> 沙漠 | a sandy region with very little rain and few trees | The Sahara is a great <i>desert</i> in the northern part of Africa.
撒哈拉沙漠是位于北非的大沙漠。 |
| desert
/dəzə:t/
<i>v.</i> 舍弃 | go away and leave; abandon | After the family <i>deserted</i> the farm, its buildings fell to ruin.
在这家人舍弃农场之后,建筑物都成了废墟。 |
| digest
/daɪdʒest/
<i>n.</i> 摘要 | a short, condensed account; summary | The publisher decided to publish a <i>digest</i> of international law.
出版商决定出版一本国际法摘要 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|---|
| [di'dʒest, dai-]
v. 消化 | be changed into a form the body can absorb | I like milk very much, but I can't <i>digest</i> it very well.
我很喜欢牛奶,却不容易消化。 |
| instinct
['instɪŋkt]
<i>n.</i> 本能 | inborn tendency to act in a certain way | Most animals have an <i>instinct</i> to protect their young. 保护幼小动物是大部分动物的本能。 |
| [in'stɪŋkt]
<i>adj.</i> 充满的 | charged or filled (with something) | Her face was <i>instinct</i> with benevolence and kindness.
她的神色充满了仁慈。 |
| intimate
['ɪntɪmɪt]
<i>adj.</i> 亲密的 | very familiar; known very well; close and familiar | Although the governor knew many peoples, he had few <i>intimate</i> friends. 州长虽然认识很多人,却没有几个密友。 |
| [ɪn'timeɪt]
v. 暗示 | suggest indirectly; hint; imply | He <i>intimated</i> that he was dissatisfied with his job.
他暗示他不满意他的工作。 |

Exercise 24.4 从第四部份中选出斜体词的正确音标：

5. Her smile *intimated* that she was very pleased.

- (A) *'intimitid* (B) *'intimeitid*

【解答】

1. A 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. B

《第五部分》

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|--|--|
| minute
('minit)
<i>n. 分</i> | one sixtieth of an hour; sixty seconds | The train arrived at exactly four minutes past eight.
火车刚好八点四分到达。 |
| minute
('mai'nju:t)
<i>adj. 微小的</i> | very small in size or degree, tiny; diminutive | There has been a <i>minute</i> improvement in the working conditions of the factory. 工厂的工作情形已有微小的改善。 |
| object
('ɔbdʒikt)
<i>n. 物体</i> | something that can be seen or felt; thing | A dark <i>object</i> moved between me and the door. 有一个黑色的物体在我和门之间移动。 |
| object
('əb'dʒekt)
<i>v. 反对</i> | give as a reason against something; purpose | Do you <i>object</i> to my smoking in this room?
你反对我在房间内吸烟吗? |
| refuse
(ri'fju:z)
<i>v. 拒绝</i> | say no; decline to accept; reject | He asked her to marry him but she <i>refused</i> . 他向她求婚,但她拒绝了。 |
| refuse
('refju:s)
<i>n. 垃圾</i> | useless stuff; waste; rubbish; trash | The street-cleaning department took away all <i>refuse</i> from the street. 清洁队收走街上所有垃圾。 |

| WORD | MEANING | TYPICAL USE |
|--|---|---|
| tear (tɪə)
<i>n.</i> 泪 | a drop of salty liquid that flows from the eye during pain or sadness | The little girl was in <i>tears</i> because she'd lost her mother.
小女孩因失去了母亲而哭了。 |
| (tɪə)
<i>v.</i> 撕 | pull apart or into pieces by force | Don't <i>tear</i> up paper; put it in the waste basket.
不要撕纸,把它放进垃圾桶。 |
| used
(ju:zd)
<i>adj.</i> 用旧了的 | not new; second-hand | The janitor removed <i>used</i> towels from the rack.
工友把旧毛巾从架子上移开。 |
| (ju:st)
<i>adj.</i> 习惯于 | accustomed; usual | It took long to get <i>used</i> to foreign food. 要习惯他国的饮食需要一段很长的时间。 |

Exercise 24. 5 从第五部份中选出斜体词的正确音标:

1. His writing is so *minute* that it's difficult to read.
 (A) 'minɪt (B) mai'nju:t
2. The national museum in Seoul is full of interesting *objects*.
 (A) ləbdʒɪkts (B) ab'dʒekts
3. She *refused* him when he asked her to marry him.
 (A) ri'fju:zd (B) 'refju:st
4. Why did you *tear* the cloth when I'd advised you to cut it with scissors?
 (A) tiə (B) tɪə
5. John's uncle sells *used* cars at Chongro.
 (A) ju:zd (B) ju:st

{ 【解答】 1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. A }

成 果 测 验

Exercise 24.6 由第二栏中选出第一栏各词的正确词义：

- | COLUMN I | |
|----------------------|--|
| _____ 1. ascent | |
| _____ 2. assent | |
| _____ 3. cannon | |
| _____ 4. canon | |
| _____ 5. cession | |
| _____ 6. session | |
| _____ 7. intension | |
| _____ 8. intention | |
| _____ 9. stationary | |
| _____ 10. stationery | |

- | COLUMN II | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| (A) a large gun | |
| (B) a formal meeting | |
| (C) handing over to another | |
| (D) purpose | |
| (E) agreement | |
| (F) intensity | |
| (G) a rule or law | |
| (H) climbing | |
| (I) writing materials | |
| (J) not moving | |

【解答】 1. H 2. E 3. A 4. G 5. C 6. B 7. F 8. D 9. J 10. I

Exercise 24.7 阅读下面的句子，选出句中斜体词所代表的词义：

- | | |
|---|----------------------|
| _____ 1. He had a chance to <i>address</i> a large audience for the first time in his life. | |
| (A) deliver a speech | (B) show his ability |
| _____ 2. A responsible man never <i>deserts</i> his wife and family. | |
| (A) forgets | (B) abandons |
| _____ 3. He <i>intimated</i> a wish to go by saying that it was late. | |
| (A) implied | (B) mentioned |
| _____ 4. Mother <i>objected</i> that the weather was too bad to play outdoors. | |
| (A) opposed | (B) doubted |
| _____ 5. The picture on the wall is <i>instinct</i> with life and beauty. | |
| (A) lacking | (B) filled |

【解答】 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B

Exercise 24.8 选出一个不是斜体词词义的答案:

1. attribute

- (A) trait (B) lead to
(C) believe to be the result of

2. content

- (A) fortune (B) gratify
(C) what is contained in anything

3. converse

- (A) chat (B) the opposite of something
(C) preserve

4. instinct

- (A) natural tendency (B) charged (C) extinguished

5. intimate

- (A) threaten (B) familiar (C) hint

6. object

- (A) thing (B) oppose (C) obligation

7. refuse

- (A) diffuse (B) reject (C) waste

8. used

- (A) not new (B) accustomed (C) not working

【解答】 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. A 6. C 7. A 8. C

Exercise 24.9 从下列的生词中选出最适当的词，填入空格内：

VOCABULARY LIST

| | | | |
|----------|------------|------------|------------|
| minutes' | attributed | principles | committee |
| ascent | address | pray | instinct |
| fainted | tears | alter | stationary |

1. The success of the present project can be _____ to Mr. Johnson.
2. The _____ of Mount Everest requires superhuman strength and endurance.
3. The population of this town has been _____ for ten years at about 12,000 people.
4. If the coat is too large, a tailor can _____ it to fit you.
5. A single regiment _____ on the front of the fortress while the rest of the division prepared to attack from the rear.
6. One of the _____ of this book is that explanations of words should be in simple language.
7. Don't forget to write the return _____ on the parcel.
8. Birds do not learn to build nests but build them by _____.
9. My wife burst into _____ when she heard the bad news.
10. It's only a few _____ walk from here to the station.

【解答】 1. attributed 2. ascent 3. stationary 4. alter
 5. fainted 6. principles 7. address 8. instinct
 9. tears 10. minutes'